

# PlateSpin® Transformation Manager User Guide

June 2018

## Legal Notice

For information about legal notices, trademarks, disclaimers, warranties, export and other use restrictions, U.S. Government rights, patent policy, and FIPS compliance, see <https://www.microfocus.com/about/legal/>.

**Copyright © 2017 NetIQ Corporation, a Micro Focus company. All Rights Reserved.**

---

# Contents

<b>About This Book</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Part I Getting Started</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>1 Overview of PlateSpin Transformation Manager</b>	<b>15</b>
1.1 Inherent Challenges for Workload Transformation	15
1.2 Benefits of Using Transformation Manager for Large-Scale Transformations	16
1.3 PlateSpin Migration Factory Environment	18
1.4 PlateSpin Discovery Environment	20
1.5 Planning Mode and Automated Mode	21
1.6 Transformation Methods	22
1.7 Transformation Planning Workflow	23
1.8 Key Components and Capabilities	24
1.8.1 Appliance	24
1.8.2 Web Interface	25
1.8.3 PlateSpin Migrate Connector	25
1.9 Planning Projects in the Web Interface	26
1.9.1 Dashboard	26
1.9.2 Planning	27
1.9.3 Users	28
1.9.4 Resources	28
1.9.5 Configuration	28
1.10 What's Next	29
<b>2 Planning for PlateSpin Transformation Manager</b>	<b>31</b>
2.1 Requirements	31
2.1.1 Workload Discovery	31
2.1.2 Host Resource Discovery	32
2.1.3 Tracking External Migrations	32
2.1.4 Automated Migration	32
2.2 Deployment Requirements for Automated Migration	33
2.2.1 Transformation Manager	33
2.2.2 Migrate Connector Requirements	34
2.2.3 PlateSpin Migrate Requirements	34
2.3 Network Connectivity and Access Requirements	34
2.3.1 Event Messaging	35
2.3.2 Workload Discovery	36
2.3.3 Target Host Discovery	36
2.3.4 Workload Migration	37
2.4 Security Guidelines	37
2.4.1 SSL (HTTPS) for Secure Communications	37
2.4.2 SSL Certificate for Secure Communications	38
2.4.3 Antivirus Setup for Discovery	38
2.4.4 Proxy Services	38
2.4.5 Unique Login Credentials for Each Connector Instance	38
2.4.6 Password Security for Credentials Resources	39

<b>3</b>	<b>Getting Started Checklist</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Using the Web Interface</b>	<b>45</b>
4.1	Prerequisites for Using the Web Interface	45
4.1.1	Port Requirements	45
4.1.2	Supported Browsers for the Web Interface	46
4.1.3	Supported Languages	46
4.1.4	Session Timeout	46
4.2	Accessing the Web Interface	47
4.3	Web Interface Toolbar	47
4.4	Global Project Selector	49
4.5	Bulk Actions	49
4.5.1	Spreadsheet Import	50
4.5.2	Range Import	50
4.5.3	Bulk Edit	50
4.5.4	Bulk Status Change	50
4.6	Show Link for Navigation URLs	50
4.7	Bookmarks	51
4.8	Custom Display and Filters for Lists	52
4.8.1	Refresh List Items	52
4.8.2	Number of Items in a List	53
4.8.3	Show More Data in a Cell	53
4.8.4	Sort Data	53
4.8.5	Show/Hide Columns in a List	53
4.8.6	Filter Data in a List	54
4.8.7	Advanced Search of Data	54
4.9	Scrolling Up and Down in Lists	55
4.10	Multiple Item Selection in Lists	55
4.10.1	Selecting Consecutive Items	56
4.10.2	Selecting Non-Consecutive Items	56
4.10.3	Selecting All Items	56
	<b>Part II Configuration</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Managing Licenses</b>	<b>61</b>
5.1	About Licenses	61
5.1.1	Full License	61
5.1.2	Evaluation License	61
5.2	How Workloads Consume Licenses	62
5.3	Adding a License Key	62
5.4	Adding a License Block	63
5.5	Viewing License Status for a Workload	64
5.6	License Warnings	64
<b>6</b>	<b>Monitoring PlateSpin Migrate Connectors</b>	<b>67</b>
6.1	About the Connectors List	67
6.2	Viewing Migrate Connector Assignments	68
6.3	Viewing Migrate Connector Connection Status	68
6.4	Deleting a Connector Instance	68
6.5	Troubleshooting Migrate Connector Connections	69

<b>7</b>	<b>Configuring PlateSpin Migrate Connector</b>	<b>71</b>
7.1	About Global Options for Connectors	71
7.1.1	General Settings	71
7.1.2	Migrate Server Settings	72
7.1.3	Customer-Provided Scripts	73
7.2	Viewing Global Migrate Connector Settings	73
7.3	Configuring Global Settings for Migrate Connector	74
7.4	Assigning a Migrate Connector Instance	74
<b>8</b>	<b>Configuring Operating Systems</b>	<b>77</b>
8.1	About Operating System Types	77
8.2	Viewing the List of Operating System Types	78
8.3	Creating an Operating System Type	78
8.4	Editing an Operating System Type	78
8.5	Deleting an Operating System Type	79
<b>A</b>	<b>Configuring a Custom UI Theme for the Web Interface</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>Part III</b>	<b>Users</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Overview of PlateSpin User Management</b>	<b>85</b>
9.1	System Users and Organization Users	85
9.2	Roles	85
9.2.1	System Administrator Role	86
9.2.2	Project Manager Role	87
9.2.3	Project Architect Role	87
9.2.4	Migration Specialist Role	87
9.2.5	Dashboard Viewer Role	88
9.3	Example: Digital Airlines Users	88
<b>10</b>	<b>Managing Organizations</b>	<b>91</b>
10.1	About Organizations	91
10.2	Creating an Organization	92
10.3	Uploading an Organization Logo	93
10.4	Editing an Organization	93
10.5	Removing an Organization	94
<b>11</b>	<b>Managing Users</b>	<b>95</b>
11.1	About Users	95
11.2	Viewing Users	96
11.3	Creating a User	96
11.4	Creating a User for Connector Login	96
11.5	Editing a User	97
11.6	Changing a User Password	97
11.7	Removing a User	98
<b>12</b>	<b>Managing Groups</b>	<b>99</b>
12.1	About Groups	99
12.2	Viewing Groups	100

12.3	Creating a Group . . . . .	100
12.4	Editing a Group . . . . .	100
12.5	Removing a Group . . . . .	101
<b>Part IV Planning Transformation Projects</b>		<b>103</b>
<b>13 Overview of Project Planning</b>		<b>105</b>
13.1	Planning Waves and Batches . . . . .	105
13.2	Prerequisites for Planning . . . . .	106
13.3	Granting Access . . . . .	106
13.4	Transforming Workloads . . . . .	106
13.5	Scheduling Dates . . . . .	107
<b>14 Dashboard</b>		<b>109</b>
14.1	Using the Dashboard . . . . .	109
14.1.1	About the Dashboard . . . . .	110
14.2	Viewing Counts and Status for a Project, Wave, or Batch . . . . .	112
14.3	Viewing Workload Status . . . . .	113
14.4	What's Happening . . . . .	113
14.5	Bookmarks . . . . .	113
14.6	Recently Viewed . . . . .	114
<b>15 Managing Projects</b>		<b>115</b>
15.1	About Projects . . . . .	115
15.2	Prerequisites for Projects . . . . .	117
15.3	Viewing a Project . . . . .	117
15.4	Creating a Project . . . . .	117
15.5	Editing a Project . . . . .	118
15.6	Configuring Custom Field Names for a Project . . . . .	118
15.7	Configuring Project Associations . . . . .	119
15.8	Deleting a Project . . . . .	119
<b>16 Managing Waves</b>		<b>121</b>
16.1	About Waves . . . . .	121
16.2	Prerequisites for Waves . . . . .	122
16.3	Viewing Waves . . . . .	122
16.4	Creating a Wave . . . . .	122
16.5	Editing a Wave . . . . .	123
16.6	Configuring Wave Associations . . . . .	123
16.7	Deleting a Wave . . . . .	124
<b>17 Managing Batches</b>		<b>125</b>
17.1	About Batches . . . . .	125
17.2	Prerequisites for Batches . . . . .	126
17.3	Viewing a Batch . . . . .	126
17.4	Creating a Batch . . . . .	126
17.5	Editing a Batch . . . . .	127
17.6	Moving a Batch to a Different Wave . . . . .	127
17.7	Configuring Batch Associations . . . . .	128

17.8	Deleting a Batch . . . . .	128
<b>18</b>	<b>Managing Applications</b>	<b>129</b>
18.1	About Applications . . . . .	129
18.2	Prerequisites for Applications . . . . .	129
18.3	Viewing Applications . . . . .	129
18.4	Creating Applications . . . . .	130
18.5	Creating Applications during Spreadsheet Import . . . . .	130
18.6	Editing Applications . . . . .	130
18.7	Associating Applications and Workloads . . . . .	130
18.8	Deleting an Application . . . . .	131
<b>Part V</b>	<b>Workloads</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>19</b>	<b>Overview of Workloads</b>	<b>135</b>
19.1	Automated Mode . . . . .	135
19.2	Workload Types . . . . .	135
19.3	Workload Transformation Methods . . . . .	136
19.4	OS Types . . . . .	136
19.5	Custom Fields . . . . .	136
<b>20</b>	<b>Importing and Discovering Workloads</b>	<b>137</b>
20.1	About Source Workload Details . . . . .	137
20.2	About Workload Discovery . . . . .	137
20.2.1	Discovery Requirements for Source Workloads . . . . .	137
20.2.2	Import and Discovery Process . . . . .	138
20.2.3	Troubleshooting Discovery Failures . . . . .	139
20.3	Viewing Workloads . . . . .	139
20.4	Importing Workloads with a Spreadsheet . . . . .	139
20.5	Importing Workloads with Auto-Discovery . . . . .	140
20.5.1	About Import . . . . .	141
20.5.2	Importing a Single Workload by IP Address or FQDN . . . . .	141
20.5.3	Importing Workloads in an IP Address Range . . . . .	142
20.6	Retrying Workload Discovery . . . . .	143
20.7	Rediscovering Workloads . . . . .	143
<b>21</b>	<b>Configuring Workload Transformations</b>	<b>145</b>
21.1	About the Workload Dialog . . . . .	145
21.1.1	Header . . . . .	146
21.1.2	Workload IDs and Discovery Address . . . . .	146
21.1.3	URL for the Workload dialog . . . . .	147
21.1.4	Errors and Warnings . . . . .	147
21.1.5	Status and Retry . . . . .	147
21.1.6	Migration Sub Status . . . . .	149
21.1.7	Discovery Status and Rediscovery . . . . .	150
21.1.8	Last Modified . . . . .	150
21.1.9	License State . . . . .	150
21.1.10	Transformation Plan . . . . .	150
21.1.11	Migration Settings . . . . .	152
21.1.12	Workload . . . . .	153
21.1.13	Location . . . . .	154
21.1.14	Network Interfaces . . . . .	155

21.1.15	Testing Network Interfaces	156
21.1.16	Storage	156
21.1.17	Applications	158
21.1.18	Custom Fields	158
21.1.19	Transformation History	158
21.2	Viewing the Workloads List	158
21.3	Viewing a Workload NIC and Volume Summary	159
21.4	Locating Workloads with the Filter and Advanced Search	160
21.5	Viewing Workload Details for Automated Transformations	161
21.6	Tracking Workload Status for External Migrations	161
21.6.1	About Tracking External Migrations	161
21.6.2	Checklist for Tracking External Migrations	162
21.7	Editing the Workload Transformation	164
21.8	Configuring the Source NIC to Use for Replication	165
21.9	Editing a Workload Transformation after Submit	165
21.10	Bulk Edit for Multiple Proposed Workloads	166
21.10.1	About Bulk Edit	166
21.10.2	Selecting Workloads for Bulk Edit	170
21.10.3	Applying a Bulk Edit	170
21.11	Bulk Status Change for Multiple Proposed Workloads	171
21.12	Synchronizing Edits from the Migrate Server	171
21.13	Viewing the Transformation History	172
21.14	Adding User Notes to the Transformation History	172
21.15	Withdrawing a Submitted Workload	173
21.16	Deleting a Workload	174
<b>B</b>	<b>Bulk Import Spreadsheet</b>	<b>175</b>
B.1	About Spreadsheet Import	176
B.1.1	Spreadsheet Import Tools	176
B.1.2	Spreadsheet Import Workflow	177
B.2	Spreadsheet Parameters	178
B.3	Downloading a Sample Import Spreadsheet	187
B.4	Validating a Spreadsheet	187
B.5	Downloading the Results Spreadsheet	188
B.6	Re-Importing Workloads	188
<b>Part VI</b>	<b>Resources</b>	<b>191</b>
<b>22</b>	<b>Overview of Resources</b>	<b>193</b>
22.1	About Resources	193
22.2	Prerequisites for Resources	193
<b>23</b>	<b>Managing Credentials Resources</b>	<b>195</b>
23.1	About Credentials Resources	195
23.2	Viewing Credentials	196
23.3	Creating a Credential	196
23.4	Associating Credentials with Workloads, Hosts, or Migration Servers	197
23.4.1	Associating Credentials and Workloads	197
23.4.2	Associating Credentials and Hosts	197
23.4.3	Associating Credentials and Migration Servers	198
23.5	Editing a Credential	198
23.6	Deleting a Credential	198



<b>24 Managing Host Resources</b>	<b>201</b>
24.1 About Automated Host Discovery . . . . .	201
24.1.1 Discovery Requirements for Target Hosts . . . . .	201
24.1.2 Discovery Process for Hosts . . . . .	202
24.1.3 Troubleshooting Host Discovery Failures . . . . .	202
24.2 About Host Resources . . . . .	203
24.3 Viewing Hosts. . . . .	204
24.4 Creating Source Hosts . . . . .	204
24.5 Creating a Target Host . . . . .	204
24.6 Retrying Host Discovery. . . . .	205
24.7 Rediscovering Hosts . . . . .	206
24.8 Editing Target Hosts . . . . .	206
24.9 Associating Hosts and Target Workloads. . . . .	207
24.10 Deleting a Host. . . . .	207
<b>25 Managing Migration Server Resources</b>	<b>209</b>
25.1 About Migration Server Resources . . . . .	209
25.2 Viewing Migration Server Resources . . . . .	210
25.3 Creating a Migration Server Resource . . . . .	210
25.4 Associating Migration Servers and Target Workloads . . . . .	211
25.5 Editing a Migration Server Resource . . . . .	211
25.6 Deleting a Migration Server . . . . .	212
<b>26 Managing Network Resources</b>	<b>213</b>
26.1 About Network Resources . . . . .	213
26.2 Viewing Networks. . . . .	213
26.3 Creating a Source Network . . . . .	214
26.4 Creating a Target Network . . . . .	214
26.5 Associating Networks and Target Workloads. . . . .	214
26.6 Editing a Target Network . . . . .	215
26.7 Deleting a Network. . . . .	215
<b>27 Managing Datastore Resources</b>	<b>217</b>
27.1 About Datastore Resources . . . . .	217
27.2 Viewing Datastores . . . . .	217
27.3 Creating a Source Datastore . . . . .	218
27.4 Creating a Target Datastore . . . . .	218
27.5 Associating Datastores and Target Workloads. . . . .	218
27.6 Editing a Target Datastore . . . . .	219
27.7 Deleting a Target Datastore . . . . .	219
<b>28 Managing Resource Pool Resources</b>	<b>221</b>
28.1 About Resource Pool Resources . . . . .	221
28.2 Viewing Resource Pools . . . . .	221
28.3 Creating a Resource Pool . . . . .	222
28.4 Associating Resource Pools with Workloads . . . . .	222
28.5 Editing a Resource Pool. . . . .	222
28.6 Deleting a Resource Pool . . . . .	223

<b>29 Managing Environment Resources</b>	<b>225</b>
29.1 About Environment Resources	225
29.2 Viewing Environments	225
29.3 Creating a Source Environment	226
29.4 Creating an Environment	226
29.5 Associating Environments and Target Workloads	226
29.6 Editing an Environment	227
29.7 Deleting an Environment	227
 <b>Part VII Appendixes</b>	 <b>229</b>
 <b>C Global Planning Objects</b>	 <b>231</b>
C.1 User Roles	231
C.2 Workload Types	231
C.3 Workload Transformation Methods	232
C.4 Operating System Families	232
C.5 Operating System Architectures	232
C.6 Cloud Providers	233
C.7 Virtualization Technologies (Hypervisors)	233
C.8 Volume Types	233
C.9 Storage Mapping Strategies	233
C.10 Storage Objects	233
C.11 Disk Copy Methods	234
C.12 Compression Levels	234
C.13 Migration Server Types	234
C.14 Host Discovery States	234
C.15 Project Phases	235
C.16 Transformation Phases	235
C.17 Workload Health	235
C.18 Workflow Status	236
C.19 Migration Sub Status	237
 <b>D Documentation Updates</b>	 <b>241</b>
D.1 June 2018	241

# About This Book

The *User Guide* provides information about using PlateSpin Transformation Manager to manage your large-scale data center transformation and migration projects. It includes conceptual information, an overview of the user interface, and step-by-step guidance for common tasks.

- ♦ [Part I, “Getting Started,” on page 13](#)
- ♦ [Part II, “Configuration,” on page 59](#)
- ♦ [Part III, “Users,” on page 83](#)
- ♦ [Part IV, “Planning Transformation Projects,” on page 103](#)
- ♦ [Part V, “Workloads,” on page 133](#)
- ♦ [Part VI, “Resources,” on page 191](#)
- ♦ [Part VII, “Appendixes,” on page 229](#)

## Intended Audience

This document is intended for network administrators and operators who use PlateSpin Transformation Manager to plan, execute, and monitor transformation projects for a data center or an enterprise. Users who plan workload transformations are assumed to have a working knowledge of network operations, Windows and Linux operating systems on x86 and x64 architectures, and virtualization technologies.

## Additional Documentation

For the most recent version of this guide and other PlateSpin Transformation Manager documentation resources, visit the [PlateSpin Transformation Manager 1.1 SP1 Documentation website \(https://www.netiq.com/documentation/platespin-transformation-manager-1-1/\)](https://www.netiq.com/documentation/platespin-transformation-manager-1-1/).

In addition to English, some documentation is available shortly after general availability in the Japanese national language.

## Contact Information

We want to hear your comments and suggestions about this book and the other documentation included with this product. You can use the [comment on this topic](#) link at the bottom of any page of the online documentation, or send an email to [Documentation-Feedback@netiq.com](mailto:Documentation-Feedback@netiq.com).

For specific product issues, contact Micro Focus Customer Care at <https://www.microfocus.com/support-and-services/>.



# Getting Started

PlateSpin Transformation Manager is a migration lifecycle solution for large-scale data center and enterprise transformation projects. You can plan, schedule, execute, and monitor server migrations across physical, virtual, and cloud infrastructures. Its multi-tenancy architecture segregates data for organizations and projects, ensuring data confidentiality for each tenant and project.

- ♦ [Chapter 1, “Overview of PlateSpin Transformation Manager,” on page 15](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 2, “Planning for PlateSpin Transformation Manager,” on page 31](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 3, “Getting Started Checklist,” on page 41](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 4, “Using the Web Interface,” on page 45](#)



# 1 Overview of PlateSpin Transformation Manager

PlateSpin Transformation Manager is a planning, tracking, and automation solution for data center transformation projects. It features familiar project roles, progress visualization with a dashboard, and support for all workload transformation methods. Import with automated discovery simplifies and standardizes the setup of workloads and target hosts for planning. In Automated Mode, you can control the transformation workflow from import to cutover from a single point of control across multiple PlateSpin Migrate servers. Your team can increase project predictability, transformation speed, and success ratios, which helps reduce overall project costs and time to completion.

PlateSpin Migrate Connector supports workload and host discovery, load-balances the assignment of migration jobs to PlateSpin Migrate servers, and manages communications for the execution and monitoring of transformation plans for your PlateSpin Migrate migration projects.

- ♦ [Section 1.1, “Inherent Challenges for Workload Transformation,” on page 15](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.2, “Benefits of Using Transformation Manager for Large-Scale Transformations,” on page 16](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.3, “PlateSpin Migration Factory Environment,” on page 18](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.4, “PlateSpin Discovery Environment,” on page 20](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.5, “Planning Mode and Automated Mode,” on page 21](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.6, “Transformation Methods,” on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.7, “Transformation Planning Workflow,” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.8, “Key Components and Capabilities,” on page 24](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.9, “Planning Projects in the Web Interface,” on page 26](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.10, “What’s Next,” on page 29](#)

## 1.1 Inherent Challenges for Workload Transformation

As your business evolves, the data center can expand unevenly or in very dissimilar ways through mergers and acquisitions. Legacy and new technologies coexist. Your IT staff maintains a heterogeneous mix of hardware architectures, operating systems, and applications. This workload diversity increases the stress on your IT staff as well as the likelihood of human error. In addition, older hardware typically has a larger facility footprint, consumes more power, and requires more cooling than a consolidated solution using virtualization platforms.

### Benefits of Transformation

You want to transform your workloads to achieve these benefits:

- ♦ Optimize workload diversity to better meet your current and future business needs
- ♦ Simplify daily operations
- ♦ Improve overall efficiency
- ♦ Reduce operational costs
- ♦ Reduce risks in the IT environment

## Goals for Transformation

The purpose of any workload transformation or migration is to change workloads from their current modes of operation to appropriate future modes of operation. How you achieve the change depends on the types of workloads you manage and your business needs. Typical project objectives include the following:

- ♦ Migrate workloads between physical, virtual, and cloud infrastructures.
- ♦ Upgrade workloads to newer hardware, different hardware vendors, or hosted provider hardware.
- ♦ Consolidate workloads on virtualization host servers or to cloud infrastructures.
- ♦ Move virtual files to newer virtualization host servers, running the same or different virtualization hypervisors.
- ♦ Lift and shift equipment from location A to location B.
- ♦ Decommission old workloads as you retire software and services.

Your transformation or migration project might be a combination of any of these goals, or thousands of instances of the same one.

## Challenges for Transformation

**Migration planning is unwieldy.** Migrating workloads from one place to another is easy to do if you have a few servers, or even 100 servers. Large-scale migration project might have thousands, or even hundreds of thousands of workloads. The information and planning requirements are not easily captured in a spreadsheet.

**Business takes priority.** Transformations require minimal downtime for mission critical applications and services. Each workload transformation has different priorities and windows of opportunity based on business demands. Schedules must consider the availability of target facilities, network resources, equipment, and the IT staff needed to plan and execute the transformation. Management and organization stakeholders want to track the progress and status of your projects.

**Assessment is tedious.** Defining the original state of a workload can be tedious. You create a profile of the workload that includes information about its compute infrastructure, operating system, applications, data, and configuration. Because workloads might be upgraded or repurposed over time, the profile might need to be augmented or updated before you execute the transformation. The related proposed workload profile might also need to change as appropriate to the revisions to the original workload.

**The process seems never-ending.** Large-scale IT transformation projects typically occur over an extended period in a production environment that might span multiple locations. Complex projects with massive numbers of workloads might take months or even years to complete. It might be possible to plan details only a few months in advance. Projects require multiple phases, not a one-time effort.

## 1.2 Benefits of Using Transformation Manager for Large-Scale Transformations

PlateSpin Transformation Manager brings together all aspects of planning into a transformation methodology that is:

- ♦ Consistent



- ♦ Reliable
- ♦ Repeatable

## **Plan and Track Events through the Full Transformation Life-Cycle**

Each workload transformation plan identifies the current and future environment for each workload, including the hardware, applications, and other dependent resources that must be in place for a successful cutover to the target workload. You manage and track progress for each workload independently through all phases from import to completion. You can also track cumulative metrics for each batch, wave, and project.

## **Automate Migrations across Multiple PlateSpin Migrate Servers**

In a [PlateSpin Migration Factory environment](#), you can plan, execute, and monitor workload migrations through Transformation Manager. PlateSpin Migrate Connector load-balances thousands of migration jobs across large farms of PlateSpin Migrate servers. Transformation Manager automates each workload's migration, according to its transformation plan, through the Migrate Connector.

## **Track Manual Migrations across Multiple PlateSpin Migrate Servers**

Transformation Manager also tracks the status of migration jobs that you manually configure and manage using PlateSpin Migrate user interfaces. You leverage the planning and monitoring features in Transformation Manager to track overall progress for manual PlateSpin Migrate projects.

## **Planning Features Are Flexible**

You can create custom resources for each project, and add custom fields to track information important to you. With powerful forms for search and bulk actions, you can efficiently organize workloads into batches and waves, and apply the same settings on multiple workloads at a time.

## **Control Access and Visibility through Role-Based Permissions**

Planning involves more than the IT staff who performs the technical work. You can assign permissions for key stakeholders to monitor the project status and reports. Keeping interested parties involved with data migrations helps minimize or eliminate potential conflicts for the execution of transformations.

## **Performance and Scalability Are Built-In**

The Web Interface and database are designed to manage up to about 500,000 transformations in a single project.

## **Role-Based Multi-Tenancy Supports Multiple Customers and Projects**

Role-based multitenancy allows you to manage multiple organizations and projects, while protecting the security and confidentiality of their data. Organizations can be the end customers of providers, or different departments in an enterprise. User roles and their related permissions control the actions and visibility of information for users.

## **Your Transformation Goals Are Achievable**

Using Transformation Manager to plan and monitor your transformation projects allows you to achieve your transformation goals:

- ♦ Dramatically increases project predictability

- ♦ Increases transformation speed, reducing the time to completion
- ♦ Improves the success ratio and reduces the likelihood of human error
- ♦ Reduces the costs

## 1.3 PlateSpin Migration Factory Environment

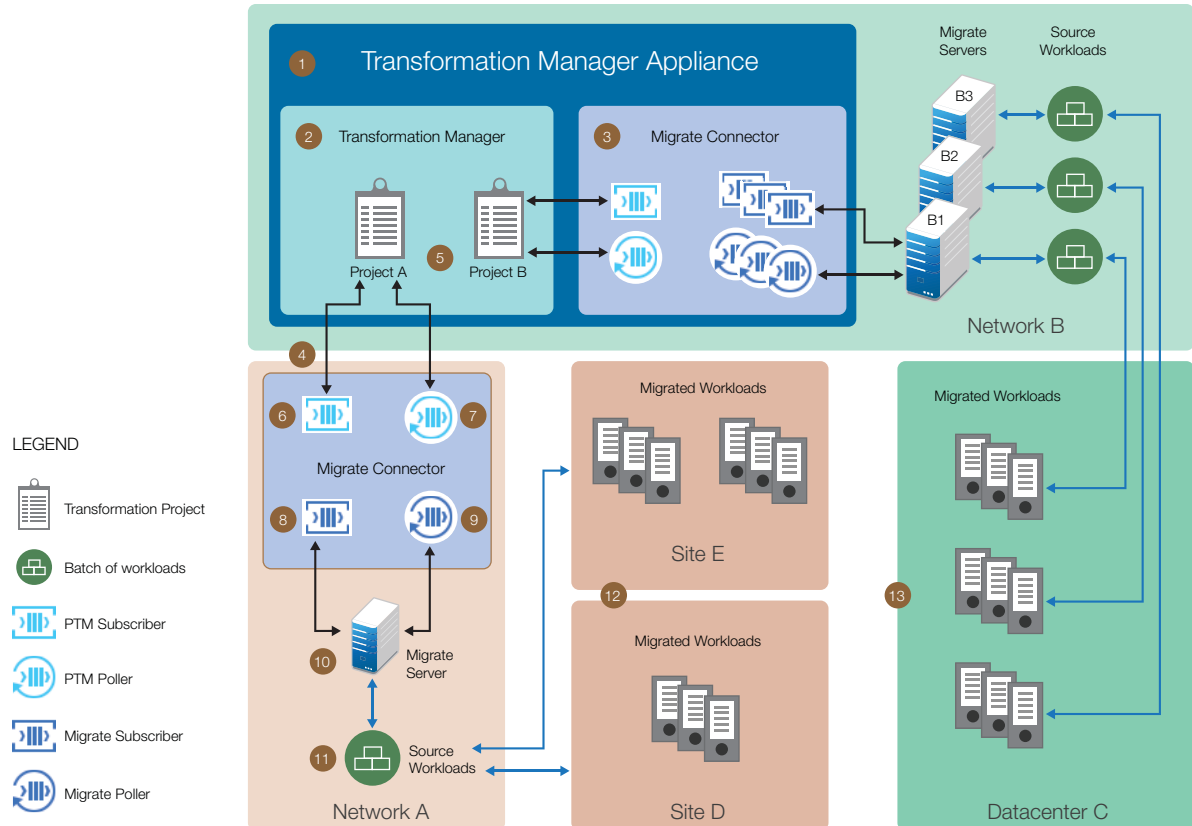
The PlateSpin Migration Factory environment enables you to automate many tasks for workload migration by combining PlateSpin Transformation Manager with PlateSpin Migrate Connector and one or more PlateSpin Migrate servers. You can plan and execute automated migrations of workloads to target VMs on VMware Cluster hosts.

The transformation workflow and schedule determine when migration tasks are executed. Transformation Manager can pause automation to allow the Migration Specialist to manually perform some tasks. Migration Specialists can monitor the workload migrations and respond to exceptions, which enables them to handle more migrations in less time.

PlateSpin Migrate Connector integrates activities between Transformation Manager and Migrate servers. It load-balances the migration jobs across large farms of PlateSpin Migrate servers in the project. The Connector listens for migration events from Transformation Manager and delivers information to the appropriate Migrate servers. The Connector listens for migration status events from the various PlateSpin Migrate servers and delivers event information only to the appropriate project and workload.

[Figure 1-1](#) illustrates the deployment environment for automated PlateSpin migration. See [Table 1-1](#) for a description of how automated migration works in a PlateSpin Migration Factory environment.

**Figure 1-1** PlateSpin Migration Factory environment



**Table 1-1** *How Automated Migration Works in a PlateSpin Migration Factory Environment*

<b>PlateSpin Migration Factory environment</b>	<b>Description</b>
1. PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance	The appliance VM hosts the Transformation Manager Server (PTM Server) and an instance of the Migrate Connector.
2. PlateSpin Transformation Manager Server	A single PTM Server manages one or more Migrate Connector instances.
3. PlateSpin Migrate Connector instance deployed on the appliance	The Migrate Connector instance on the Appliance is preconfigured to work with the PTM Server. This instance can integrate events for one or more Migrate servers in the same network as the Appliance.
4. PlateSpin Migrate Connector instance deployed in other networks	For multiple projects, you need a dedicated Migrate Connector instance for each project in the same network as the PlateSpin Migrate servers and the source workloads to be migrated. Install additional Connector instances on your servers running SUSE Linux Enterprise Server.
5. Transformation projects	With multiple projects, each Migrate Connector instance works with a single assigned project. The Connector ensures the privacy and security of each project's data in a multi-tenant environment.
6. PlateSpin Transformation Manager Subscriber	Each Connector has one PTM Subscriber. The subscriber listens for events pushed from its assigned PTM Server. The subscriber listens only for events for the assigned project.
7. PlateSpin Transformation Manager Poller	Each Connector has one PTM Poller. The poller periodically polls its assigned PTM Server to check that it has received all events since the last poll. The poller checks only for events for the assigned project.
8. PlateSpin Migrate Subscriber	Each Connector uses a separate Migrate Subscriber for each Migrate server assigned to its project. Each subscriber listens for events pushed dynamically from its Migrate server. The subscribers listen only for events for workloads that have been imported to the assigned project.
9. PlateSpin Migrate Poller	Each Connector uses a separate Migrate Poller for each Migrate server assigned to its projects. Each poller periodically polls its Migrate server to check that it has received all events since the last poll. The pollers check only for events for workloads that have been imported to the assigned project.
10. PlateSpin Migrate servers	For a project, you create a Migration Server resource for each PlateSpin Migrate server that you will use to execute workload migrations. When migration jobs begin, the Connector initiates a subscriber and poller for the specified Migrate server and starts listening and polling for migration state events.

PlateSpin Migration Factory environment	Description
11. Source workloads	<p>For a project, you import basic information about the source workloads that you plan to migrate, then an automated discovery process adds the details, or <i>inventory</i>, for each workload.</p> <p>For automated migrations, you can manually assign a specific Migration Server resource to a source workload, or you can allow the Connector to automatically assign a Migration Server resource. Auto-assignment ensures that workload migrations are load-balanced across all of the assigned Migrate servers.</p> <p>After you submit a workload, the migration workflow progresses according to the workload's transformation plan through the Migrate server.</p>
12. Workloads migrated to hosts in different sites	<p>Each workload's transformation plan defines the proposed workload and its target VMware cluster and network. You organize the workload migrations into waves and batches, and schedule them according to your business needs.</p> <p>In this example, you plan to migrate workloads to multiple sites in the same or different network. Workloads in a batch have the same destination site. The Migration Specialist at each site manages the migrations to the site.</p>
13. Workloads migrated to different hosts in the same site	<p>In this example, you plan to migrate workloads to different VMware clusters in a data center.</p>

## 1.4 PlateSpin Discovery Environment

In a PlateSpin Discovery environment, PlateSpin Transformation Manager works with the PlateSpin Migrate Connector to provide automated discovery of details when you import a workload or create a Host resource. Workload discovery is required before you can submit a workload for automated migration.

---

**NOTE:** PlateSpin Migrate servers are not required for discovery. They can be set up later in your migration projects.

---

Import with automated discovery simplifies and standardizes the setup of workloads for planning. You provide minimal connection information and logon credentials for the machines. The discovery process retrieves details about each machine, populates properties for the related object in the planning database, and sets up a proposed workload based on those settings.

Transformation Manager provides automated discovery of workloads and hosts:

- ♦ **Source workload discovery:** Transformation Manager provides the following methods of import and automated discovery of workloads:
  - ♦ Spreadsheet
  - ♦ Range of IPv4 addresses (0 to 255)
  - ♦ Single IPv4 address

- ♦ **Target host discovery:** Transformation Manager provides automated discovery for target VMware Cluster hosts. Discovery adds the Host resource and adds resources for its discovered networks and datastores.

You can retry failed discoveries for a single workload or for multiple workloads. You can also rediscover workloads or hosts if needed.

## 1.5 Planning Mode and Automated Mode

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports the full transformation lifecycle. For each project, you can choose whether to work in Planning Mode or Automated Mode. You can switch between the two modes if needed. You can set a different mode on an individual workload in a project.

- ♦ **Planning Mode:** Planning Mode allows you to plan a variety of workload migrations that you execute without using the automated execution options in Transformation Manager. In a PlateSpin Migration Factory environment, you can track the state of workload migrations you execute on PlateSpin Migrate servers. You can optionally use Automated Mode for some workloads in a planning project.

Planning Mode supports the automated tracking of external migrations configured and executed on PlateSpin Migrate servers for workloads that have been imported to the project.

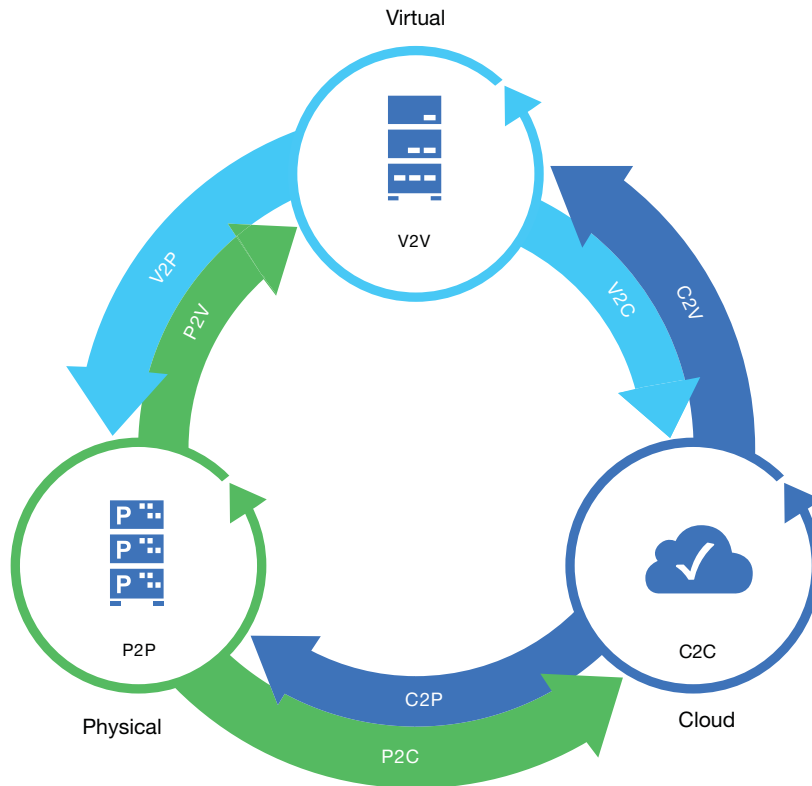
- ♦ **Automated Mode:** Automated Mode allows you to plan, execute, and track automated workload migrations in your PlateSpin Migration Factory environment. You can optionally use Planning Mode for individual workloads in an automated project.

Automated Mode supports automated execution of transformations from physical machines and VMware virtual machines to target virtual machines on VMware Cluster hosts.

## 1.6 Transformation Methods

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports planning for any-to-any transformation and migration methods as well as virtual file move, decommission, and lift and shift.

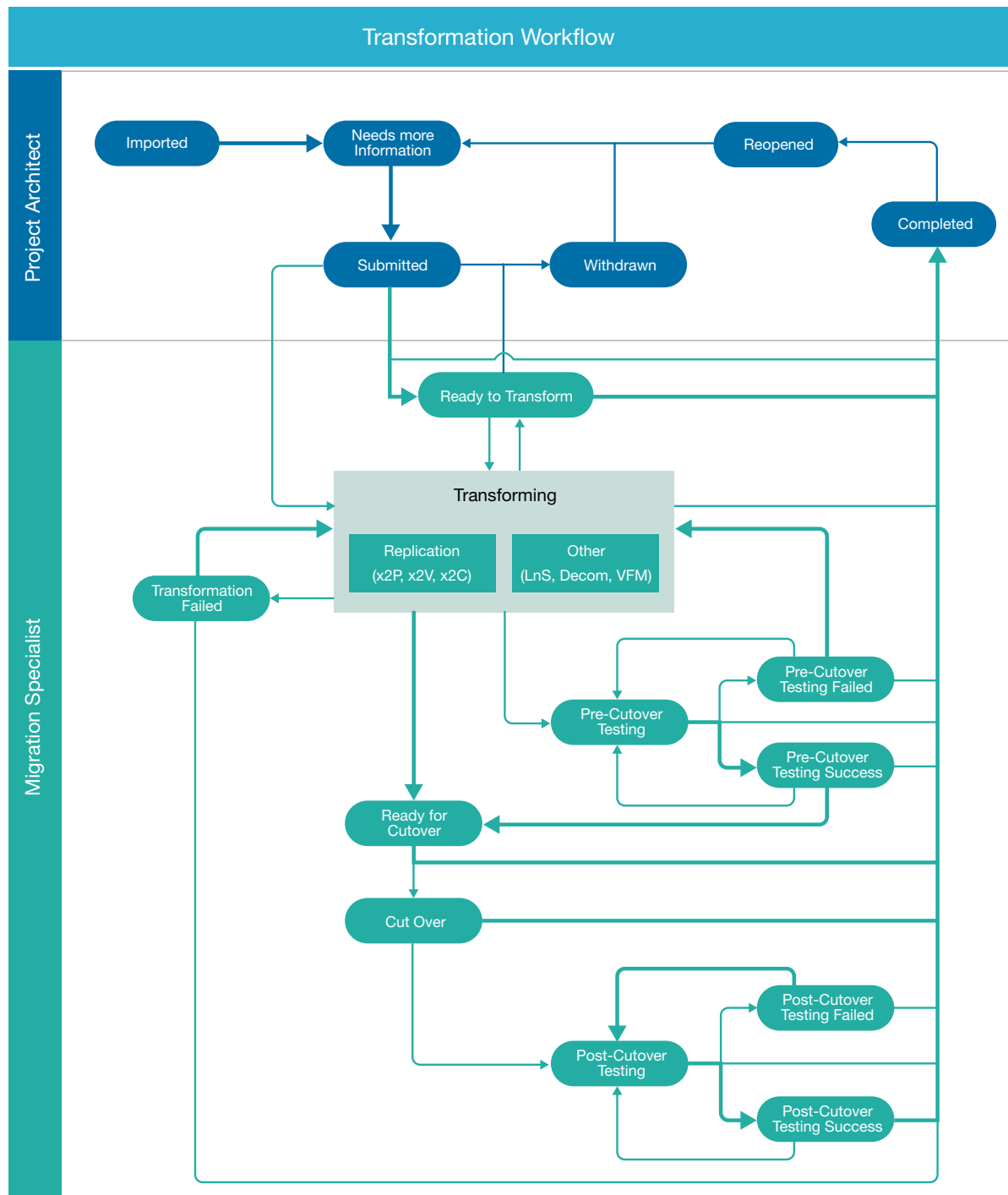
**Figure 1-2** Any-to-Any Workload Transformation Methods



## 1.7 Transformation Planning Workflow

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports transformation workflow planning that is compatible with any migration solution. [Figure 1-3](#) shows the workflow for a transformation project as you track it using the Web Interface.

**Figure 1-3** Transformation Workflow



As the **Project Manager**, you set up components to represent different logical and physical aspects of your IT environment. Global components provide predefined resources.

As the **Project Manager** or **Project Architect**, you import information about the source workloads, and discover details about the workload, including hardware, applications, NICs, and disks.

The import process creates a proposed target workload based on the settings for the original workload. If you re-import or rediscover the source workload information, the new details apply to the target workload until you begin to plan the transformation.

As **Project Architect**, you define the future workload environments and refine details about the target workloads as they are known. You assign the workloads to scheduled waves and batches.

The **Migration Specialists** execute and monitor the workload transformation processes. For automated migrations, they monitor workloads as they progress through the automated transformation workflow, and intercede as needed. For external migrations on Migrate servers, Transformation Manager tracks the state information. For manual migrations, they can manually enter different state information about the work in progress. See [Table 21-1, “State Descriptions,” on page 148](#).

As **Dashboard Viewers**, your project stakeholders can view progress metrics and related reports in the Dashboard.

## 1.8 Key Components and Capabilities

PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides an appliance-based installation that is simple to deploy and maintain. The Web Interface for users is easily accessible on standard web browsers and is easy to use.

- ♦ [“Appliance” on page 24](#)
- ♦ [“Web Interface” on page 25](#)
- ♦ [“PlateSpin Migrate Connector” on page 25](#)

### 1.8.1 Appliance

The PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance hosts the Transformation Manager software, an instance of the PlateSpin Migrate Connector software, and the database for your transformation projects.

- ♦ **The appliance is ready to deploy in your virtualization environment.** The virtual machine includes a fully tested software stack that PlateSpin Transformation Manager needs, and omits unneeded applications and services that can consume system resources.
- ♦ **Web-based administration tools simplify server setup and maintenance.** You do not need to understand the underlying operating system, software, or databases.
- ♦ **PlateSpin Migrate Connector is ready to go.** Transformation Manager Appliance includes an instance of PlateSpin Migrate Connector that is automatically installed and configured to work with the Transformation Manager server running on the Appliance.
- ♦ **Update Channel makes appliance maintenance easy.** You can use the Online Update option to manage post-release product updates for PTM server software, post-release product updates for the PlateSpin Migrate Connector software for the installed instance, and security updates for the software and operating system on the Appliance host VM. See [“Online Update” in the \*PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance Guide\*](#).

For more information, see the [PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance Guide](#).



## 1.8.2 Web Interface

The PlateSpin Transformation Manager Web Interface allows role-based access to project information from anywhere at any time on a range of devices.

- ♦ **Securely access project information from anywhere at any time.** Visibility and actions for both internal and external stakeholders are appropriate to their user role.
- ♦ **Prioritize, organize, and schedule tasks.** Break down transformation goals into manageable chunks by project, wave, and batch.
- ♦ **Plan and track workload transformations.** Capture details for source workloads and target workloads in physical, virtual, and cloud infrastructures, with any-to-any migration, lift and shift, virtual file move, and decommission.
- ♦ **Define custom components for each project.** Associate workloads with applications, credentials, hosts, migration servers, networks, datastores, resource pools, and environments.
- ♦ **Achieve fast and efficient workload manipulations of multiple workloads at a time.** Powerful forms for Advanced Search, Bulk Edit, and Bulk Status Change allow you to apply the same settings on selected workloads.
- ♦ **Monitor project status using the real-time visual dashboard and status reports.** Internal and external stakeholders can track progress by project, wave, and batch, and view warnings for missed deadlines and schedule deviations.
- ♦ **Manage multiple concurrent projects for different organizations.** Enterprises, managed service providers, and system integrators can leverage role-based access and multi-tenancy to keep end customer data secure and confidential.
- ♦ **Effectively handle massive planning efforts.** Projects can scale from thousands to tens of thousands of workloads with minimal impact on performance.
- ♦ **Automatically discover source workloads.** You can automatically discover details about a workload on import. See [“PlateSpin Discovery Environment” on page 20](#).
- ♦ **Automatically execute and track your VMware migration projects.** In a PlateSpin Migration Factory environment, you can automate the execution of migrations and track related transformation workflow events. See [“PlateSpin Migration Factory Environment” on page 18](#).
- ♦ **Automatically track your PlateSpin Migrate migration projects.** In a PlateSpin Migration Factory environment, you can track the status of migrations for imported workloads where migrations are executed on PlateSpin Migrate servers.

For more information, see [“Planning Projects in the Web Interface” on page 26](#) and [“Using the Web Interface” on page 45](#).

## 1.8.3 PlateSpin Migrate Connector

PlateSpin Migrate Connector supports automated discovery and migration by integrating Transformation Manager with the PlateSpin Migrate servers in a project. It provides several advantages for planning, managing, and executing workload transformation projects:

- ♦ **Integrates PlateSpin Transformation Manager and PlateSpin Migrate servers.** Migrate Connector integrates Transformation Manager and your PlateSpin Migrate servers by using event messaging and secure REST API communications.
- ♦ **Allows multiple Connector instances.** You can have multiple Connector instances registered with a single PTM server, where each instance is associated with a separate project.
- ♦ **Configure global settings for Migrate Connectors.** System Configuration settings on the Migrate Connector page in Transformation Manager apply globally to all Connector instances registered with the PTM Server.

- ♦ **Provides automated discovery of details for source workloads.** Migrate Connector works with import options in Transformation Manager to discover details for source Windows and Linux workloads.
- ♦ **Load-balances migration jobs across available Migrate servers.** Migrate Connector uses round-robin load-balancing to distribute workload migration jobs evenly across multiple PlateSpin Migrate servers in your project.
- ♦ **Drives the automated migration on Migrate Servers.** In Automated Mode, Migrate Connector drives the automated execution of workload migrations for your VMware migration projects in a PlateSpin Migration Factory environment based on each workload's transformation plan. Global settings control when automated migration jobs are set up, if and when pre-cutover testing begins, and when the jobs are removed after cutover.
- ♦ **Coordinates communications in the PlateSpin Migration Factory environment.** Migrate Connector supports polling and eventing types of communications in a PlateSpin Migration Factory environment.
  - ♦ Migrate Connector listens for migration events from Transformation Manager and delivers them to the appropriate Migrate servers.
  - ♦ Migrate Connector listens for migration status events from the PlateSpin Migrate servers and delivers them to the appropriate project and workloads.
- ♦ **Supports user-provided callouts.** Migrate Connector supports user-provided callouts during the transformation workflow that integrate Transformation Manager with your internal systems.

For more information, see the [PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start](#).

## 1.9 Planning Projects in the Web Interface

Most of your interaction with the PTM Server occurs through the Web Interface. This web-based planning tool allows access to project information from anywhere on a range of devices. You use the following key Web Interface components to efficiently manage your transformation projects for one or more organizations.

- ♦ [“Dashboard” on page 26](#)
- ♦ [“Planning” on page 27](#)
- ♦ [“Users” on page 28](#)
- ♦ [“Resources” on page 28](#)
- ♦ [“Configuration” on page 28](#)

### 1.9.1 Dashboard

The Dashboard provides summary information to show how much progress the team has made in completing work.

- ♦ **Custom metrics:** Key stakeholders can view progress metrics by project, wave, and batch, according to their assigned roles and needs.
- ♦ **Project progress:** Workload Status shows the total number of workloads and their current status as imported, defining, submitted, in progress, completed, and warning. Each category provides a link to a list of workloads in that category.
- ♦ **Project distribution:** Workload Breakdown shows core statistics by the transformation method and operating system.

For users in project roles other than a Dashboard Viewer, the Dashboard provides tools to enhance a user's ability to see and do the important things today. All links honor the view and edit permissions of the user role.

- ♦ **What's Happening:** The What's Happening panel displays key events for the current date, or for a specified date. Users quickly know what workloads to work on today, and what workloads to prepare for an upcoming date. See ["What's Happening" on page 113](#).
- ♦ **Bookmarks:** The Bookmarks panel displays the user's personal bookmarks. Bookmark URLs capture the state of the page or dialog visited. Users can easily revisit favorite pages or dialogs without performing repetitive and complex queries. See ["Bookmarks" on page 113](#).
- ♦ **Recently Viewed:** The Recently Viewed panel displays links to pages and dialogs that the user recently accessed for view or edit actions. Users can quickly return to a location without repeating the navigation or complex search criteria. See ["Recently Viewed" on page 114](#).

For more information, see ["Using the Dashboard" on page 109](#).

## 1.9.2 Planning

- ♦ **Projects:** Create one or more projects for each organization.
  - ♦ Set each project to Planning Mode or Automated Mode.
  - ♦ Define custom variables to use for each project.

You can use custom fields to add project-specific details for each workloads, such as budget IDs, contact information, and tags to track logical or business associations among workloads. Custom fields are available in Advanced Search and Bulk Edit forms when the Global Project Selector is set.
  - ♦ Set the start and end dates for the project. Child objects automatically inherit dates from their parents. You can also set dates manually.
- ♦ **Waves:** Break out projects in manageable chunks by grouping the workloads in waves. Set the start and end dates for each wave.
- ♦ **Batches:** Break out waves in manageable chunks by grouping workloads in batches. Set the start and end dates for each batch.
- ♦ **Applications:** Define applications that can be associated with workloads in a project.
- ♦ **Workloads:**
  - ♦ Import the source workload information for your project. You can leverage automated discovery to import details for workloads.
  - ♦ Use powerful forms for advanced search, bulk status change, and bulk edit to achieve fast and efficient workload manipulations of multiple workloads at a time.
  - ♦ Assign workloads to batches through individual or bulk edits.
  - ♦ Define the appropriate transformation configuration for each workload.
  - ♦ Use the workload information to execute the workload transformation plan and to set the workflow status.
- ♦ **Global Project Selector:** Set the Global Project Selector to automatically filter lists and dialogs for a specific project. This feature is useful for users who have permissions in multiple projects.

For more information, see ["Overview of Project Planning" on page 105](#). See also the following related topics:

- ♦ ["Managing Projects" on page 115](#)
- ♦ ["Managing Waves" on page 121](#)

- ♦ [“Managing Batches” on page 125](#)
- ♦ [“Managing Applications” on page 129](#)
- ♦ [“Workloads” on page 133](#)

### 1.9.3 Users

- ♦ Define organizations, users, and groups.
- ♦ Assign users to the Administrators group for elevated privileges and responsibilities.
- ♦ Assign users to project roles:
  - ♦ Project Managers
  - ♦ Project Architects
  - ♦ Migration Specialists
  - ♦ Dashboard Viewers

The multi-tenant architecture controls access for each user account based on the assigned roles.

For more information, see [“Overview of PlateSpin User Management” on page 85](#). See also the following related topics:

- ♦ [“Managing Organizations” on page 91](#)
- ♦ [“Managing Users” on page 95](#)
- ♦ [“Managing Groups” on page 99](#)

### 1.9.4 Resources

Define custom resources that can be associated with workloads in a project:

- ♦ Credentials
- ♦ Hosts
- ♦ Migration Servers
- ♦ Networks
- ♦ Datastores
- ♦ Resource Pools
- ♦ Environments

For more information, see [“Resources” on page 191](#).

### 1.9.5 Configuration

Configure and monitor global settings that apply across all projects:

- ♦ **Connectors:** View the name and health status of all PlateSpin Migrate Connectors registered with the Transformation Manager server.

For more information, see [“Monitoring PlateSpin Migrate Connectors” on page 67](#).

- ♦ **Licenses:** View license information, including the start date, expiration date, and the number of licenses remaining in each license block.

For more information, see [“Managing Licenses” on page 61](#).

- ♦ **Migrate Connector:** Configure default global settings for PlateSpin Migrate Connectors used with projects in your transformation environment.  
For more information, see [“Configuring PlateSpin Migrate Connector” on page 71](#).
- ♦ **Operating Systems:** Configure default global operating system types used by all projects in your transformation environment.  
For more information, see [“Configuring Operating Systems” on page 77](#).

## 1.10 What’s Next

Use the [Getting Started Checklist](#) to learn more about the Web Interface, and to set up your first project.



# 2 Planning for PlateSpin Transformation Manager

PlateSpin Transformation Manager works with PlateSpin Migrate Connector to discover workload details, migrate workloads to supported targets, and track external migrations. Your environment must meet the deployment and configuration requirements in this section before you can enjoy these features.

For information about installation requirements, see the [PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance Guide](#) and the [PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start](#).

- ♦ [Section 2.1, “Requirements,” on page 31](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2, “Deployment Requirements for Automated Migration,” on page 33](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3, “Network Connectivity and Access Requirements,” on page 34](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4, “Security Guidelines,” on page 37](#)

## 2.1 Requirements

Ensure that your environment meets the deployment requirements in this section to take advantage of automation features.

- ♦ [Section 2.1.1, “Workload Discovery,” on page 31](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.2, “Host Resource Discovery,” on page 32](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.3, “Tracking External Migrations,” on page 32](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.4, “Automated Migration,” on page 32](#)

### 2.1.1 Workload Discovery

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports discovery of details for Windows workloads and Linux workloads running on x86 and x64 architectures. It attempts automated discovery when you import the workload to a project.

The following information is required for discovery:

- ♦ FQDN or IP address, or range of IP addresses
- ♦ Administrator-level credentials for the source workloads
- ♦ Open ports on the network as required for discovery (see [Section 2.3.2, “Workload Discovery,” on page 36](#))

## 2.1.2 Host Resource Discovery

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports discovery of resources for VMware Clusters. It attempts automated discovery of networks and datastores on the host when you create a Host resource for a project. Resources are created for discovered Networks and Datastores.

The following information is required for discovery:

- ♦ FQDN or IP address of the VMware vCenter Cluster
- ♦ Administrator-level credentials for the VMware vCenter Cluster
- ♦ Open ports on the network as required for discovery

## 2.1.3 Tracking External Migrations

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports tracking for migrations performed on PlateSpin Migrate servers. The following prerequisites apply:

- ♦ A PlateSpin Migrate Connector is associated with the project.
- ♦ Event messaging is enabled on the PlateSpin Migrate server.
- ♦ The PlateSpin Migrate server is configured as a Migration Server resource for the project.
- ♦ The workload has been imported into a project.

See [Table 21-4, “Checklist for Tracking External Migrations,” on page 162.](#)

## 2.1.4 Automated Migration

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports automated migration of workloads to VMware vCenter Clusters executed on PlateSpin Migrate servers. The supported configurations for source workloads and target hosts in Transformation Manager depends on the supported configurations in PlateSpin Migrate.

See also [Section 2.2, “Deployment Requirements for Automated Migration,” on page 33.](#)

- ♦ [“Supported Source Workloads” on page 32](#)
- ♦ [“Supported Target Platforms” on page 32](#)

### Supported Source Workloads

For a list of Windows and Linux workload configurations supported for migration to VMware by PlateSpin Migrate, see [“Supported Source Workloads For Migration to Non-Cloud Platforms”](#) in the *PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide*.

### Supported Target Platforms

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports automated migration to VMware vCenter Clusters that are executed on PlateSpin Migrate servers. For a list of vCenter platforms supported by PlateSpin Migrate, see [“VMware vCenter”](#) in [“Supported Target Virtualization Platforms”](#) in the *PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide*.

---

**NOTE:** Migration of any workload to a target VM container is subject to the support of the guest operating system on the target host by the host vendor.

---



## 2.2 Deployment Requirements for Automated Migration

PlateSpin Transformation Manager and PlateSpin Migrate Connector work together to manage automated execution of a workload's transformation plan by using your PlateSpin Migrate servers.

For automated migration, ensure that your environment meets the deployment requirements for PlateSpin Migration Factory.

- ♦ [Section 2.2.1, “Transformation Manager,” on page 33](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2.2, “Migrate Connector Requirements,” on page 34](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2.3, “PlateSpin Migrate Requirements,” on page 34](#)

### 2.2.1 Transformation Manager

- ♦ **Network Connectivity and Access**

Ensure that network communications are properly configured and operational. See [“Network Connectivity and Access Requirements” on page 34](#)

- ♦ **Migrate Connector Settings**

- ♦ Configure the global migration settings that apply to all Migrate Connector instances. See [“Configuring PlateSpin Migrate Connector” on page 71](#).

- ♦ **Migration Server Resources**

- ♦ Configure a Migration Server resource for each Migrate server that you plan to use for your project. See [“Managing Migration Server Resources” on page 209](#).
- ♦ For each workload, use auto-assignment of Migration Server resources, or associate a specific Migration Server resource with the workload.

- ♦ **Credentials Resources**

Ensure that associated Credential resources are valid before you submit the workload for automated execution:

- ♦ Source workload
- ♦ Target Host resource
- ♦ Target Migration Server resource

- ♦ **Source Workload**

- ♦ Ensure that the workload Transformation Plan is in Automated Mode.  
The **Mode** setting in the workload Transformation Plan must be set to **Automated**. This value is inherited from the project **Mode** setting by default, but you can alternatively set the value at the workload level.
- ♦ Configure required information for the proposed workload.
- ♦ Automated workload discovery is required prior to submitting the workload for execution. Information added from the Import Spreadsheet is not sufficient for automation.
- ♦ Ensure that the workload is up and running.

- ♦ **Target Host**

Ensure that the target host is up and running.

- ♦ **Target Migration Server**

Ensure that the assigned PlateSpin Migrate Server is up and running.

## 2.2.2 Migrate Connector Requirements

- ♦ Deploy a Migrate Connector instance in the same network as the source workloads.

The Connector instance on the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance can be used as-is if you have only a single project. The Migrate Connector instance on the Appliance is automatically configured to work with PlateSpin Transformation Manager and its required port is opened.

To set up additional instances of the connector, see “[Installing, Upgrading, or Uninstalling PlateSpin Migrate Connector](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.

- ♦ If you have multiple projects, each project must have its own dedicated Connector instance. You need the Project ID to configure a dedicated Migrate Connector for a project.

See “[Configuring a Project Assignment for a Connector Instance](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.

- ♦ The Migrate Connector must be up and running for the automated migration setup and status monitoring.

## 2.2.3 PlateSpin Migrate Requirements

Before you begin to submit a workload for automated migration, you must deploy PlateSpin Migrate servers in your environment. See the *PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 Installation and Upgrade Guide*.

- ♦ PlateSpin Migrate servers must be accessible from the source network. For deployment information, see “[System Requirements for PlateSpin Server](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 Installation and Upgrade Guide*.
- ♦ Ensure that the Event Messaging port is open on the Migrate Server. See [Section 2.3.1, “Event Messaging,” on page 35](#).
- ♦ Configure a Migration Server resource for each Migrate server that you plan to use for your project. See “[Managing Migration Server Resources](#)” on page 209.

You can create Migration Server resources without the detailed information for initial planning. Select **Automated Migration** in the workload’s Transformation Plan to allow the PlateSpin Migrate Connector to manage PlateSpin Migrate server assignments from among the Migration Server resources that you create for the project.

- ♦ Before you submit the workload for execution, ensure that associated Credential resource is valid for each Migrate server.
- ♦ Ensure that the assigned Migrate server is up and running.

## 2.3 Network Connectivity and Access Requirements

Ensure that the network connections are working:

- ♦ Between the PlateSpin Migrate Connector and the source workloads
- ♦ Between the PlateSpin Migrate Connector and the PlateSpin Migrate servers
- ♦ Between the source network and target network

PlateSpin Migrate Connector requires network connectivity to the following resources, based on its assignment to the PlateSpin Transformation Manager server or to a specific project:

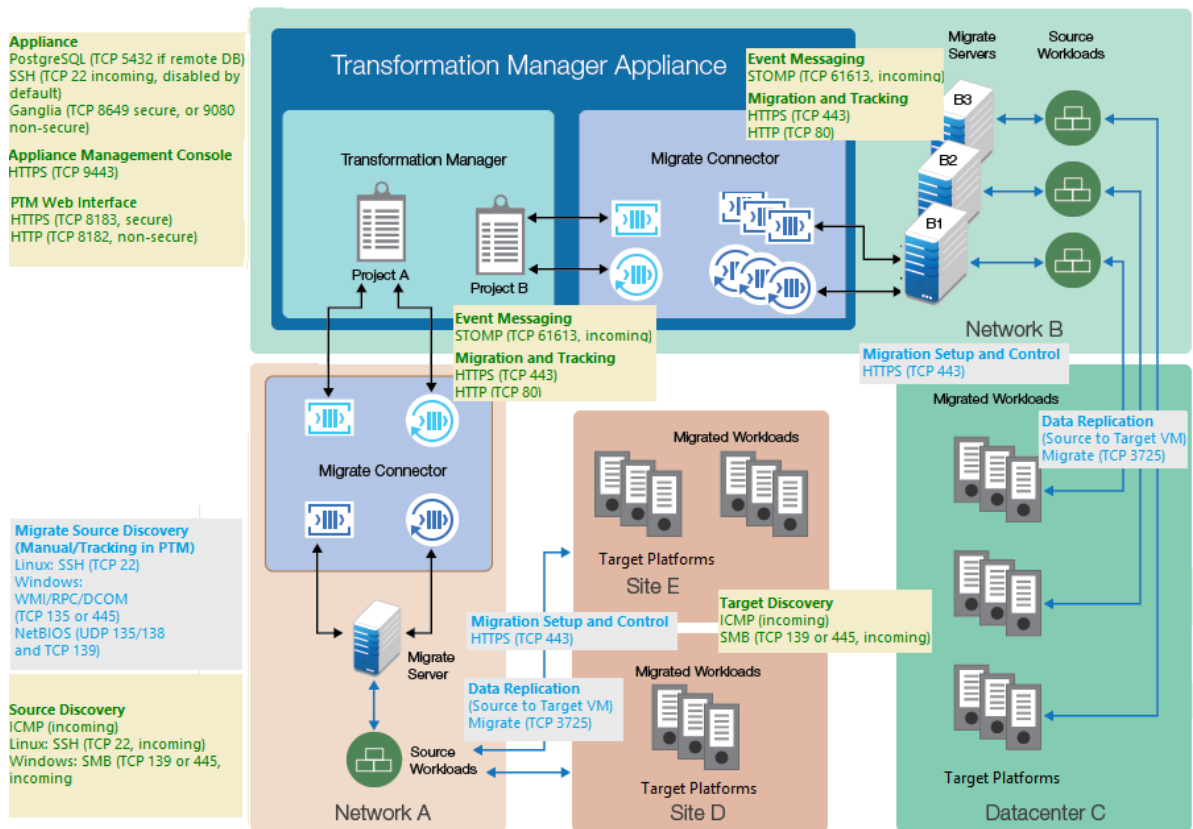
- ♦ Its assigned PTM server
- ♦ Source workloads

- ♦ Target VMware cluster hosts
- ♦ PlateSpin Migrate servers

In addition, review the security guidelines in [Section 2.4, “Security Guidelines,”](#) on page 37.

Your environment must meet the requirements described in this section for network connectivity and access. Refer to the ports map in [Figure 2-1](#).

**Figure 2-1** Ports Map for PlateSpin Migration Factory



- ♦ [Section 2.3.1, “Event Messaging,”](#) on page 35
- ♦ [Section 2.3.2, “Workload Discovery,”](#) on page 36
- ♦ [Section 2.3.3, “Target Host Discovery,”](#) on page 36
- ♦ [Section 2.3.4, “Workload Migration,”](#) on page 37

## 2.3.1 Event Messaging

PlateSpin Migrate provides an event messaging service based on RabbitMQ for use in the PlateSpin Migration Factory environment. Each PlateSpin Migrate server can publish workload migration state change messages to PlateSpin Migrate Connector instances that subscribe to the service on behalf of PlateSpin Transformation Manager projects.

Table 2-1 shows the protocol and port required for event messaging in a PlateSpin Migration Factory environment. These messages reflect events and state changes and do not contain sensitive information.

**Table 2-1** Event Messaging Requirements for Network Protocols and Ports

Traffic	Network Protocol and Port	Other Requirements
Event Messaging	61613 (Stomp, allow TCP, incoming)  (not secure)	This port is open by default on the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance, which includes a pre-installed instance of PlateSpin Migrate Connector.  Open this port on all other Connector host servers, the PlateSpin Migrate servers configured for the project, and the firewalls between them.

## 2.3.2 Workload Discovery

Workload discovery in PlateSpin Transformation Manager requires that you enable incoming ping (ICMP echo reply and ICMPv4-In echo request) traffic for source workloads and firewalls. PlateSpin supports only IPv4. For information about required software, network, and port settings for workload discovery, see Table 2-2.

**Table 2-2** Workload Discovery Requirements for Network Access and Communications

Discovery Target	Network Protocols and Ports	Other Requirements
Windows workloads	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ ICMP, incoming</li><li>♦ SMB (TCP 445 or 139)</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 SP2, 3.5 SP1 or 4.0</li><li>♦ Credentials with Domain Admin or built-in Administrator privileges</li></ul>
Linux workloads	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ ICMP, incoming</li><li>♦ SSH (TCP 22, incoming)</li></ul>	Root-level access. For information on using an account other than <code>root</code> , see <a href="https://www.netiq.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7920711">KB Article 7920711 (https://www.netiq.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7920711)</a> .

## 2.3.3 Target Host Discovery

Host discovery requires that you enable incoming ping (ICMP echo reply and ICMPv4-In echo request) traffic for target VMware hosts and firewalls. PlateSpin supports only IPv4. For information about required software, network, and port settings for host discovery, see Table 2-3.

**Table 2-3** Host Discovery Requirements for Network Access and Communications

Discovery Target	Network Protocols and Ports	Other Requirements
VMware Cluster hosts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ ICMP, incoming</li><li>♦ SMB (TCP 445 or 139, incoming)</li></ul>	VMware account with an Administrator role

## 2.3.4 Workload Migration

[Table 2-4](#) provides the ports to open in the firewall and on each of the Migrate servers in order for PlateSpin Transformation Manager to use the Migrate REST APIs for automated migration. In addition, the Migration Server resource for Migrate server must provide a valid Credentials resource for the Migrate Administrator user.

**Table 2-4** REST API Requirements for Network Access and Communications

REST API Traffic	Network Protocol and Port	Access
HTTPS (secure)	Port 443, TCP, incoming and outgoing	Administrator login credentials for the Migrate server
HTTP (non-secure)	Port 80, TCP, incoming and outgoing	Administrator login credentials for the Migrate server

In addition, Transformation Manager requires that your migration environment meets the PlateSpin Migrate requirements for network communications. See [“Requirements for Migration”](#) in the *PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide*.

## 2.4 Security Guidelines

PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides several key security options.

- ♦ [Section 2.4.1, “SSL \(HTTPS\) for Secure Communications,” on page 37](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.2, “SSL Certificate for Secure Communications,” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.3, “Antivirus Setup for Discovery,” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.4, “Proxy Services,” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.5, “Unique Login Credentials for Each Connector Instance,” on page 38](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.6, “Password Security for Credentials Resources,” on page 39](#)

### 2.4.1 SSL (HTTPS) for Secure Communications

For secure connections between PlateSpin Migrate Connector and PlateSpin Transformation Manager, the Jetty SSL settings on the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance VM are configured with the latest recommended security settings.

Ensure that you configure the Appliance to use port 8183 for secure communications.

## 2.4.2 SSL Certificate for Secure Communications

The installation of the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance generates and installs a self-signed certificate for SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) communications. It uses the DNS name that you specify for the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance. The certificate applies to the appliance and the software.

For higher security, Micro Focus recommends that you use a server certificate that is signed by a trusted certificate authority (CA) such as VeriSign or Equifax. You can use your own existing signed certificate, or you can use the Digital Certificate tool on the appliance to create a certificate, have it signed by a trusted certificate authority, and then add it to the appliance.

---

**NOTE:** The DNS name of the server must match the subject of the security certificate.

---

To import your signed certificate, you must provide the certificate and key, as described in “[Digital Certificates](#)” in the *PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance Guide*.

## 2.4.3 Antivirus Setup for Discovery

To run discovery on Windows workloads, you might need to exclude certain services, files, and folders from antivirus protection.

- ♦ **Service:** Exclude the PTM Discovery Service (`PTMDiscoverySvc.exe`) from antivirus protection.

This service uses the `PsExec` utility to run remote commands on the target `MachineDiscoveryReader.dll`.

- ♦ **Files and Folders:** Exclude the `PlateSpinDiscovery` directory, including any subdirectories and files, from antivirus protection.

During each discovery attempt, all binaries and services files the PTM Discovery Service creates and uses are located under the `PlateSpinDiscovery` directory in the first Windows share it discovers, such as `Admin$`.

- ♦ **Ports:** The antivirus software must not restrict any of the ports needed for discovery. For port information, see [Section 2.3.2, “Workload Discovery,” on page 36](#).

## 2.4.4 Proxy Services

PTM Server is proxy aware. It can use the Proxy Client settings on the host Appliance for communications with the Micro Focus License Server. Persistent Internet access is required to license the individual workloads during the planning process. You might need to configure proxy services in a highly restrictive networking environment.

See “[Configuring Proxy Client Settings](#)” in the *Appliance Guide*.

## 2.4.5 Unique Login Credentials for Each Connector Instance

To distinguish actions initiated by the project’s Connector instance, we strongly recommend that you create a unique User object to use for the Connector login credentials instead of using a real User object. Create this special user as a System user, then assign it a Project Architect role at the Project level. Create a different User object for each Connector instance with permissions appropriate for its assigned project.

## 2.4.6 Password Security for Credentials Resources

PlateSpin Transformation Manager uses industry-standard strong encryption to secure passwords in the PTM database for the Credentials resources used to access source machines and target hosts. The 16-digit key is randomly generated during the Appliance installation. The key is unique to each PTM server. As new Credentials resources are created, their passwords will be encrypted with this key.

The encryption key is stored as the `tm.encrypt.key` property in the `system.properties` file:

```
/opt/microfocus/ps_transform_mgr/config/system.properties
```

PTM writes the `system.properties` file to a ZIP file and saves it in the `/vastorage/conf/` folder when the appliance shuts down.

The `system.properties` file is protected by the strength of the password you set for root and other system users on the Appliance as well as other security best practices in your data center.





# 3 Getting Started Checklist

Use this checklist to get acquainted with the Web Interface and set up a transformation project for your organization.

**Table 3-1** *Getting Started Checklist*

Status	Task	For information, see
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Log in to the Web Interface using the System Administrator user account that you created during the PTM Appliance setup.	<a href="#">Accessing the Web Interface (page 47)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. Familiarize yourself with the Web Interface.	<a href="#">Web Interface Toolbar (page 47)</a> <a href="#">Global Project Selector (page 49)</a> <a href="#">Bulk Actions (page 49)</a> <a href="#">Show Link for Navigation URLs (page 50)</a> <a href="#">Bookmarks (page 51)</a> <a href="#">Custom Display and Filters for Lists (page 52)</a> <a href="#">Multiple Item Selection in Lists (page 55)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. Create an organization.	<a href="#">About Organizations (page 91)</a> <a href="#">Creating an Organization (page 92)</a> (Optional) <a href="#">Uploading an Organization Logo (page 93)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4. Create a transformation project.	<a href="#">About Projects (page 115)</a> <a href="#">Creating a Project (page 117)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	5. Create one or more Waves for the project.	<a href="#">About Waves (page 121)</a> <a href="#">Creating a Wave (page 122)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	6. For each Wave, create one or more Batches.	<a href="#">About Batches (page 125)</a> <a href="#">Creating a Batch (page 126)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	7. Create user accounts for your project, and assign each user to project roles as appropriate.	<a href="#">Roles (page 85)</a> <a href="#">Creating a User (page 96)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	8. Prepare one or more Import Spreadsheets for the project, or use Import with automated discovery.	<a href="#">Bulk Import Spreadsheet (page 175)</a> <a href="#">Importing Workloads with a Spreadsheet (page 139)</a> <a href="#">Importing Workloads with Auto-Discovery (page 140)</a>

Status	Task	For information, see
<input type="checkbox"/>	9. Create applications that are available to proposed workloads as you define transformations.	<a href="#">About Applications (page 129)</a> <a href="#">Creating Applications (page 130)</a> <a href="#">Table B-8, "Application Parameter," on page 187</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	10. Create target resources that are available to proposed workloads as you define transformations.	<a href="#">Resources (page 191)</a> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ <a href="#">Credentials</a></li> <li>◆ <a href="#">Hosts</a></li> <li>◆ <a href="#">Migration Servers</a></li> <li>◆ <a href="#">Networks</a></li> <li>◆ <a href="#">Datastores</a></li> <li>◆ <a href="#">Resource Pools</a></li> <li>◆ <a href="#">Environments</a></li> </ul>
<input type="checkbox"/>	11. For each imported workload, use bulk edit or individual edit to define the transformation method and details for the proposed workload.	<a href="#">Overview of Workloads (page 135)</a> <a href="#">Editing the Workload Transformation (page 164)</a> <a href="#">Bulk Edit for Multiple Proposed Workloads (page 166)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	12. As a Project Architect, submit one or more workloads for transformation.	<a href="#">Status and Retry (page 147)</a> <a href="#">Figure 21-1, "The Transformation Workflow," on page 148</a> <a href="#">Bulk Status Change for Multiple Proposed Workloads (page 171)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	13. (Automated Migration) As a Migration Specialist, monitor the workload transformations.	<a href="#">Deployment Requirements for Automated Migration (page 33)</a> <a href="#">Status and Retry (page 147)</a> <a href="#">Migration Sub Status (page 237)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	14. (Manual Migration) As a Migration Specialist, execute the workload transformations, and update their transformation status in PTM.	<a href="#">Status and Retry (page 147)</a> <a href="#">Figure 21-1, "The Transformation Workflow," on page 148</a> <a href="#">Bulk Status Change for Multiple Proposed Workloads (page 171)</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	15. (Tracking External Migration) As a Migration Specialist, set up, configure, and execute migrations on the project's PlateSpin Migrate servers. Monitor status changes in PTM that are received from the Migrate server.	<a href="#">Tracking Workload Status for External Migrations (page 161)</a>

Status	Task	For information, see
<input type="checkbox"/>	16. Monitor the project status by viewing core metrics and related reports in the real-time visual dashboard.	<a href="#">Using the Dashboard (page 109)</a> <a href="#">Viewing Counts and Status for a Project, Wave, or Batch (page 112)</a> <a href="#">What's Happening (page 113)</a> <a href="#">Bookmarks (page 113)</a> <a href="#">Recently Viewed (page 114)</a>



# 4 Using the Web Interface

Most of your interaction with PlateSpin Transformation Manager takes place through the browser-based Web Interface. A user with the System Administrator role can configure user accounts and customize some aspects of the product to suit your environment. Users plan and manage your transformation projects. Key stakeholders view project status in the Dashboard.

- ♦ [Section 4.1, “Prerequisites for Using the Web Interface,” on page 45](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.2, “Accessing the Web Interface,” on page 47](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.3, “Web Interface Toolbar,” on page 47](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.4, “Global Project Selector,” on page 49](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.5, “Bulk Actions,” on page 49](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.6, “Show Link for Navigation URLs,” on page 50](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.7, “Bookmarks,” on page 51](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.8, “Custom Display and Filters for Lists,” on page 52](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.9, “Scrolling Up and Down in Lists,” on page 55](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.10, “Multiple Item Selection in Lists,” on page 55](#)

## 4.1 Prerequisites for Using the Web Interface

Ensure that your network environment meets the requirements in this section for accessing and using the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Web Interface.

- ♦ [“Port Requirements” on page 45](#)
- ♦ [“Supported Browsers for the Web Interface” on page 46](#)
- ♦ [“Supported Languages” on page 46](#)
- ♦ [“Session Timeout” on page 46](#)

### 4.1.1 Port Requirements

During the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance installation, Transformation Manager automatically configures the default ports shown in [Table 4-1](#) on the appliance. Ensure that you open the ports in any firewalls in your network between the PlateSpin Server and the computers you use to access the Web Interface.

---

**NOTE:** For remote communications, Micro Focus recommends that you use the secure port and SSL options for accessing the Web Interface.

---

**Table 4-1** Default Network Ports

Network Port	Security	Description
8183	Secure (SSL)	HTTPS port for the Web Interface. Allow TCP and UDP traffic, incoming and outgoing.
8182	Not secure	HTTP traffic for the Web Interface. This port is disabled by default. If you enable this port, allow TCP and UDP traffic, incoming and outgoing.
5432		PostgreSQL port for a remote PTM database. Allow TCP traffic, incoming and outgoing.  This port is closed by default the PostgreSQL database is installed on the Appliance.
61613	Not secure	Used for event messaging through the PlateSpin Migrate Connector to track the status of migrations on PlateSpin Migrate servers. These messages reflect events and state changes and do not contain sensitive information.  This port is open by default on the Transformation Manager Appliance. Allow TCP traffic, incoming.  For automated migration, open this port on the PlateSpin Migrate servers assigned to the project.

For information about modifying the port setting for the Web Interface on the PlateSpin Server, see “[Web Server Configuration](#)” in the [PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance Guide](#).

## 4.1.2 Supported Browsers for the Web Interface

You can access the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Web Interface using any of the following supported browsers:

- ♦ Mozilla Firefox, latest release
- ♦ Microsoft Internet Explorer 11
- ♦ Google Chrome, latest release

---

**NOTE:** JavaScript (Active Scripting) must be enabled in your browser.

---

## 4.1.3 Supported Languages

PlateSpin Transformation Manager Web Interface supports English (En) and Japanese (Ja) languages in your web browser. Modify the Language setting in your web browser with your preferred language as the first in the list.

## 4.1.4 Session Timeout

The default session timeout occurs after 30 minutes of user inactivity. The timeout interval is configurable with a global setting on the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance. Contact your System Administrator if you would like to specify a shorter or longer interval. See “[Web Interface Session Timeout](#)” in the [PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance Guide](#).

## 4.2 Accessing the Web Interface

During the Appliance installation, you set up the default System Administrator user account for the Web Interface. This user has system-wide permissions. Log in as the System Administrator to create accounts for other users and assign roles to them. See [Section 9, “Overview of PlateSpin User Management,”](#) on page 85.

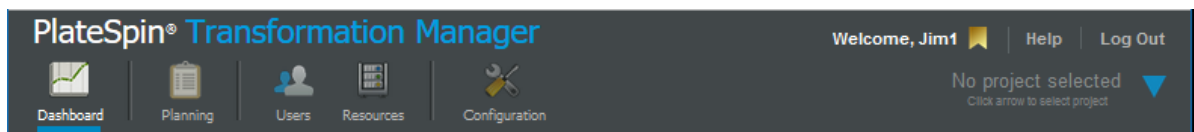
**To log in to the Web Interface:**

- 1 In a supported web browser, launch the PTM Web Interface:  
  
https://<ptm-server-dns-name\_or\_ipaddress>:8183 (secure, default)  
http://<ptm-server-dns-name\_or\_ipaddress>:8182 (not secure, disabled by default)
- 2 Specify the email address and password of your PTM user account, then click **Log In**.

## 4.3 Web Interface Toolbar

The PlateSpin Transformation Manager Web Interface toolbar gives you access to the key product features described in [Table 4-2](#).

**Figure 4-1** PlateSpin Web Interface Toolbar



**Table 4-2** Toolbar Options

Option	Description
Dashboard	<p>The Dashboard tab provides a summary view of status and health information about workload transformations. Information is restricted based on the permissions associated with the user's assigned role.</p> <p>All users except the Dashboard user can also view the following information in the Dashboard:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ What's Happening</li><li>♦ Bookmarks</li><li>♦ Recently Viewed</li></ul> <p>See <a href="#">Section 14.1, “Using the Dashboard,”</a> on page 109.</p>

Option	Description
Planning	<p>The Planning tab allows you to configure the following information for your transformation project:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Projects</li> <li>♦ Waves</li> <li>♦ Batches</li> <li>♦ Applications</li> <li>♦ Workloads</li> </ul> <p>For information about setting up a project and scheduling waves and batches, see <a href="#">Part IV, “Planning Transformation Projects,” on page 103</a>.</p> <p>For information about importing workload information and planning workload transformations, see <a href="#">Part V, “Workloads,” on page 133</a>.</p>
Users	<p>The Users tab allows you to configure the following elements for your transformation project:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Organizations</li> <li>♦ Users</li> <li>♦ Groups</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">Part III, “Users,” on page 83</a>.</p>
Resources	<p>The Resources tab allows you to configure the following network information for your transformation project:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Credentials</li> <li>♦ Hosts</li> <li>♦ Migration Servers</li> <li>♦ Networks</li> <li>♦ Datastores</li> <li>♦ Resource Pools</li> <li>♦ Environments</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">Part VI, “Resources,” on page 191</a>.</p>
Configuration	<p>The Configuration tab allows the System Administrator to perform the following tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Licenses</li> <li>♦ Migrate Connector</li> <li>♦ Operating Systems</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">Part II, “Configuration,” on page 59</a>.</p>
Global Project Selector	<p>The Global Project Selector narrows the scope globally to a single project for the information displayed and acted on. When it is enabled, the dialogs automatically complete fields for the project and its parent organization.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 4.4, “Global Project Selector,” on page 49</a>.</p>



Option	Description
Bookmarks	The Bookmarks menu provides a list of bookmarks to pages, dialogs, and queries that the logged-in user has made.  See <a href="#">Section 4.7, “Bookmarks,” on page 51</a> .
Help	The Help menu provides links to help pages for your current location, help for common tasks, a link to online documentation, and information about the product.

## 4.4 Global Project Selector

If you have permissions to work with multiple projects, the Global Project Selector helps you focus on workloads and resources for a single project at a time. The Global Project Selector sets the global scope to a single project for the information displayed and acted on. When it is enabled, the dialogs throughout the product automatically complete fields for the project and its parent organization. It applies a filter to all tables to display only the components assigned to or associated with the selected project. It also adds the custom fields that are defined for the project to the Advanced Search form and the Bulk Edit form.

When a project is selected, the Global Project Selector displays the name of the project and the logo for the project's parent organization, if it is available.

### To add the project-level filter:

- 1 Click the Global Project Selector arrow to open a list of projects.
- 2 Locate and select the appropriate project. You can scroll or filter the list to locate the project of interest.  
The selected page refreshes the list to display objects only for the selected project.

### To remove the project-level filter:

- 1 Mouse over the displayed project name and logo in Global Project Selector area, then click the **X** to remove the project filter.  
The selected page refreshes the list to display objects for all projects the user has permissions to view.

## 4.5 Bulk Actions

PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides bulk actions to help you manipulate and perform actions on multiple objects at a time.

- ♦ [“Spreadsheet Import” on page 50](#)
- ♦ [“Range Import” on page 50](#)
- ♦ [“Bulk Edit” on page 50](#)
- ♦ [“Bulk Status Change” on page 50](#)

## 4.5.1 Spreadsheet Import

You can import source workload information by importing or re-importing the machine information using the Bulk Import spreadsheet. See [Appendix B, “Bulk Import Spreadsheet,” on page 175](#).

In the PlateSpin Migration Factory environment, the PlateSpin Migrate Connector provides automated discovery of details for machines in the spreadsheet after a successful spreadsheet import.

## 4.5.2 Range Import

You can import a range of 256 IPv4 addresses using the Import option. The PlateSpin Migrate Connector provides automated discovery of details for any workloads discovered in a specified address range.

## 4.5.3 Bulk Edit

You can apply settings to multiple proposed workloads at a time by setting values in the Bulk Edit dialog. Use the Global Project Selector, Filter, Advanced Search, sort, and multiple select functions to refine the workloads list and select the items for action. Use the Bulk Edit dialog to specify a value for one or more parameters in the selected workloads. Each specified value is set independently for a selected workload only if the value is a valid setting for it. See [Section 21.10, “Bulk Edit for Multiple Proposed Workloads,” on page 166](#).

## 4.5.4 Bulk Status Change


You can apply state change settings to multiple proposed workloads at a time by using the Bulk Status Change tool. Use the advanced search and sort options to refine the list and select the items for action. Use the Bulk Status Change form to specify the appropriate state for the selected workloads. See [Section 21.11, “Bulk Status Change for Multiple Proposed Workloads,” on page 171](#).

## 4.6 Show Link for Navigation URLs

The **Show Link** icon for a dialog provides a navigation URL that takes you directly to the dialog for the selected object. You can paste the link in the Location bar of a supported web browser to return directly to the location in the Web Interface. You can also paste the link in other applications, such as email, Excel, and Word, to share with stakeholders.

Users who follow the link will be prompted to log in to the Web Interface. The user must have a PlateSpin Transformation Manager user account to log in. To see the target page and its contents, the user account must be assigned to a role that has permission to access the page and to view or edit the objects displayed on it.

**To access a dialog’s Navigation URL for a selected object:**

- 1 On the dialog, click the **Show Link** icon  in the upper right corner to show the URL to the dialog for the selected object.
- 2 (Optional) Click the link to open the dialog in a new tab, then log in again to the Web Interface to gain access.

- 3 (Optional) Copy the URL to the clipboard, then do any of the following. Users of the link must log in to access the dialog.
  - ♦ Paste the link in the Location bar of any supported web browser to open the dialog in a different browser window.
  - ♦ Paste the link in an email to share it with stakeholders.
  - ♦ Paste the link in other applications to provide convenient access to the object's information.

## 4.7 Bookmarks


PlateSpin Transformation Manager Bookmarks enable you to save repetitive and complex queries, to quickly revisit pages or dialogs, and to share views into the workflow with your team. The bookmark URL includes state information for the page, including all Advanced Search settings and the Global Project Selector setting.

Bookmarks are personal for each user and are retained in the PlateSpin Transformation Manager database. Bookmarks persist across sessions, web browsers, and computers. You can access the same bookmarks from any computer and add bookmarks from anywhere, too.

Ensure that you provide a robust description that reminds you about the content and usage of the target page or query. It should include relevant keywords and necessary information in a meaningful way. A good description will help you easily find the correct bookmark when you need it.

You can share bookmark URLs with others. Bookmarks honor the individual user's permissions based on the roles assigned to the user in one or more projects, as appropriate. Users who follow the link will be prompted to log in to the Web Interface. The user must have a PlateSpin Transformation Manager user account to log in. To see the target page and its contents, the user account must be assigned to a role that has permission to access the page and to view or edit the objects displayed on it.

### To add a bookmark:

- 1 Navigate to the page or dialog of interest
- 2 (Optional) For lists, apply a search filter to narrow the scope of the results.
- 3 Add the bookmark:
  - ♦ **Tab:** Click the **Add Bookmark** icon in the upper right corner of the page.
  - ♦ **Dialog:** Click the **Show Link** icon  in the upper right corner to show the URL to the dialog for the selected object, then click **Add to Bookmarks**.
  - ♦ **Recently Viewed:** Select the entry for the recently viewed page or dialog, then click **Add to Bookmarks**.
- 4 Specify a name for the bookmark to describe the content or context of page or dialog.

The default bookmark name is the name of the page or dialog. A custom name can help distinguish the bookmark.
- 5 In **Description**, specify information that adequately identifies this location and search conditions in your Bookmarks list.

The Description displays along with the Name in Bookmarks lists. It can be helpful to plan an approach for describing bookmarks with keywords or tags meaningful to you.
- 6 Click **Save**.

**To open a bookmark:**

- 1 In the Bookmarks list, select the bookmark, then click the link.  
The bookmarked page or dialog opens in the current web browser tab.

**To view and open bookmarks:**

- 1 In the toolbar:  
Click the **Bookmark** icon.  
or  
Click **Dashboard**, then scroll down to view the Bookmarks panel.

**To view, open, and manage a list of bookmarks:**

- 1 In the toolbar, click **Dashboard**, then scroll down to view the Bookmarks panel.
- 2 Perform any of the available actions:
  - ♦ View the bookmark name, description, and type
  - ♦ Open
  - ♦ Delete or Clear
  - ♦ Filter
  - ♦ View URL
  - ♦ Filter

**To search for a bookmark:**

- 1 In the Bookmarks list, enter text in the **Search** field.  
The search query applies to bookmark titles and descriptions.

**To remove a bookmark:**

- 1 In the Bookmarks list, select the bookmark, then click **Delete**.

## 4.8 Custom Display and Filters for Lists

In the Web Interface, you can personalize the display for lists by using display tools integrated throughout the product.

- ♦ [“Refresh List Items” on page 52](#)
- ♦ [“Number of Items in a List” on page 53](#)
- ♦ [“Show More Data in a Cell” on page 53](#)
- ♦ [“Sort Data” on page 53](#)
- ♦ [“Show/Hide Columns in a List” on page 53](#)
- ♦ [“Filter Data in a List” on page 54](#)
- ♦ [“Advanced Search of Data” on page 54](#)

### 4.8.1 Refresh List Items

Lists poll to refresh the data about once per minute. Double-click the tab title to force any list to refresh immediately, regardless of its normal polling cycle.



## 4.8.2 Number of Items in a List

Mouse over the tab title to view the total number of items in the list and the total number of selected items currently selected in the list.

## 4.8.3 Show More Data in a Cell

If a list table cell contains more information than can be displayed, the text ends in an ellipsis (...). You can mouse over the cell to show the additional information in a pop-up infotip.

## 4.8.4 Sort Data

You can sort list data in ascending order (A to Z) or in descending order (Z to A), based on values in the selected column. The sort function treats numbers as text values and sorts them alphabetically, not numerically. When you sort data, an arrow icon in the column heading indicates the that column is the key for the sort. An Up arrow  indicates an ascending sort order. A Down arrow  indicates a descending sort order.

Most columns are available as data sort keys. If a column is not available as a sort key, the toggle sort does not work, and its Columns menu does not contain the sort options.

### To sort data in a list:

- 1 Use either of the following methods to effect a sort:
  - ♦ **Toggle Sort:** Click a column heading to sort entries in ascending order based on values in that column. Click the column heading again to sort in descending order.
  - ♦ **Menu Sort:** Mouse over a column heading to activate its options, then click the arrow on the right column edge to access the menu for that column. Select **Sort Ascending** (A to Z) or **Sort Descending** (Z to A) to specify the preferred sort order.

## 4.8.5 Show/Hide Columns in a List

You can show or hide data in a list by specifying which parameters to display. Although the hidden data is not displayed, any filter or advanced search action considers the values. For example, in the Workloads list, hidden data includes location (site, enclosure, slot), custom fields, IP address, MAC address, workload type, and virtualization technology.

---

**NOTE:** Your column display preferences for each personalized list persists across your sessions.

---

### To personalize the columns in a list:

- 1 Mouse over a column heading to activate its options, then click the arrow on the heading's right edge to access the menu for that column.
- 2 Select **Columns** to display the parameters available for the list.

The menu lists parameters in the left-to-right display order in the list. Selected parameters show in the list. Deselected parameters are hidden.
- 3 Select the check box next to the parameter you want to show. The list updates to immediately add the column.

- 4 Deselect the check box next to the parameter you want to hide. The list updates immediately to remove the column.
- 5 When you are done, click anywhere on the page to exit the menu.

## 4.8.6 Filter Data in a List

Most lists in the Web Interface have a Filter option available to help you search the list and locate the information of interest. The filter applies to all searchable fields in the list, including any hidden columns. For example, on the Workloads list, the default hidden columns include custom fields, IP addresses, MAC addresses, and workload type.


---

**NOTE:** When you filter a list for a status condition, you must replace hyphens and spaces in the status name with underscores. Examples:


`in_progress`  
`pre_cutover_testing`

---

### To filter the objects in a list:

- 1 In the **Filter** field, begin typing a sequence of characters to display only the entries with values that match.  
The search and filter apply to the list almost immediately as it matches entries.
- 2 Click the **Filter** icon  to clear the **Filter** field.

## 4.8.7 Advanced Search of Data

The Advanced Search  option for lists helps you to locate multiple objects that you want to perform the same action on. Advanced Search is not available for every list.

The Advanced Search dialog is a multiple-option form that allows you to search on any combination of the following parameters for Workloads that make sense for the target of your search:

Project	Workload Type	Total Storage	Network
Wave	Transform Method	Single Disk Size	VLAN ID
Batch	Environment	Cores per Socket	Status
Hostname	Site	Amount of Memory	Sub Status
OS Type	Enclosure	On Hold	Health
Application	Custom 1	Custom 2	Custom 3
Custom 4	Custom 5	Custom 6	Custom 7

---


**NOTE:** The Global Project Selector limits the workloads in the Workloads list to the specified project. It also adds the custom fields you defined for the project to the Advanced Search form and Bulk Edit form.

---


You can use the **Health > All Warning State** option on the Workloads list Advanced Search function to see all workloads in the Warning state. For objects with warnings, you can mouse over the Status cell to view the condition that triggered the warning.

You can use the **Status** option to find all objects in a given transformation state, such as Imported, Ready to Submit, Transforming, Ready to Cutover, and so on.

#### To search:

- 1 (Optional) If you have permissions on multiple projects, click the **Global Project Selector**, then select the project of interest.
- 2 Click the **Advanced Search** icon  to the right of the Filter field.
- 3 In the Advanced Search dialog, specify a value for any search parameter.  
The search filters the list to show matches to that setting.
- 4 (Optional) For combination searches, specify a value for additional parameters until you locate the objects of interest.
- 5 (Optional) Click **Clear** to reset the Advanced Search and try again with different fields.
- 6 After you have narrowed the list to the items of interest, click in the list to exit the Advanced Search dialog.

The Advanced Search icon is shaded blue  when any option has been enabled with a search value.

- 7 When you are done, click the **Advanced Search** icon  to the right of the Filter field, then click **Clear** to reset the Advanced Search.

The Advanced Search is cleared automatically if you navigate to a different tab.

## 4.9 Scrolling Up and Down in Lists

The Web Interface is optimized to navigate lists using the scroll bar. Lists have special handling to provide responsive display and scrolling of list items, even for lists containing thousands of items. A list can display up to 25 items at a time. It caches about 200 nearby items in the browser to accommodate scrolling up and down the list. As you scroll, the Web Interface loads nearby items to the cache and releases items further away from the currently displayed items.

---

**NOTE:** Ensure that you use the scroll bar to move up and down lists in the Web Interface. Do not use the Up Arrow or Down Arrow keys to navigate lists.

---

## 4.10 Multiple Item Selection in Lists

In the Web Interface, lists have special handling to provide responsive display and scrolling of list items, even for lists containing thousands of items. A list can display up to 25 items at a time. It caches about 200 nearby items in the browser to accommodate scrolling up and down the list. As you scroll, the Web Interface loads nearby items to the cache and releases items further away from the currently displayed items.

The Web interface supports the familiar keyboard shortcuts for item selection: Shift+Click (consecutive items), Ctrl+Click (non-consecutive items), and Ctrl+A (all items). When you select an item, the Web Interface adds its information to a separate Selected Items cache. Selected rows are shaded light blue. Actions performed on the list apply only to items in the Selected Items cache.

Before you select items, use the Filter and Advanced Search options to reduce the list to the items of interest. Use the Sort function to group like items in the list to accommodate consecutive selection.

You can mouse over the list's Tab title to show the following:

- ♦ **List Size:** The total number of items in the list

- ♦ **Selected:** The current number of selected items in the list

Use the following instructions to navigate the list and select items:

- ♦ [“Selecting Consecutive Items” on page 56](#)
- ♦ [“Selecting Non-Consecutive Items” on page 56](#)
- ♦ [“Selecting All Items” on page 56](#)

### 4.10.1 Selecting Consecutive Items

Use the Shift+Click action to select consecutive items in a list. Before you begin, use the sort option in column headers to group the items of interest and facilitate consecutive selection.

**To select consecutive items in a list:**

- 1 Click the first item of interest, press and hold the Shift key, and then click the last item of interest in the displayed list to add those consecutive items to the cached list of selected items.
- 2 (Optional) Scroll up or down to show the next set of deselected items, press and hold the Shift key, then make your next last item selection to extend the consecutive item selection. Repeat the scroll and selection process as needed.
- 3 (Optional) Mouse over the list's Tab title to view the current count for the number of selected items.

### 4.10.2 Selecting Non-Consecutive Items

Use the Ctrl+Click action to select non-consecutive items in a list.

**To select non-consecutive items in a list:**

- 1 Press and hold the Ctrl key, and then click each item in the displayed items that you want to add to the cached list of selected items.
- 2 (Optional) Scroll up or down to show the next set of deselected items, press and hold the Ctrl key, then make your next non-consecutive item selection. Repeat the scroll and selection process as needed.
- 3 (Optional) Mouse over the list's Tab title to view the current count for the number of selected items.

### 4.10.3 Selecting All Items

The Ctrl+A action selects all of the currently loaded items in the list cache instead of selecting only the currently displayed items. After you select the loaded items, you will scroll through 140 to 200 selected items before you see the next set of deselected items.

**To select all items in a list:**

- 1 Mouse over the list's Tab title to view the total number of items in the list.  
The item count gives you an idea of how much scrolling is needed to load and select items.
- 2 Press Ctrl+A to select the currently loaded set of items and add them to the cached list of selected items.
- 3 Scroll up or down until you see the next set of deselected items.
- 4 Press Ctrl-A to add the currently loaded items to the cached list of selected items.



- 5 Repeat [Step 3](#) and [Step 4](#) until all items are selected.
- 6 Mouse over the list's Tab title to see the total item count and total selected item count. If they are the same, then all items in the list are selected.



# Configuration

PlateSpin Transformation Manager enables a user with the System Administrator role to configure settings for PlateSpin Transformation Manager that apply to all transformation projects.

- ♦ [Chapter 5, “Managing Licenses,” on page 61](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 6, “Monitoring PlateSpin Migrate Connectors,” on page 67](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 7, “Configuring PlateSpin Migrate Connector,” on page 71](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 8, “Configuring Operating Systems,” on page 77](#)
- ♦ [Appendix A, “Configuring a Custom UI Theme for the Web Interface,” on page 81](#)



# 5 Managing Licenses

PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides full and evaluation license options. You must have a license for each workload transformation.

- ♦ [Section 5.1, “About Licenses,” on page 61](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.2, “How Workloads Consume Licenses,” on page 62](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.3, “Adding a License Key,” on page 62](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.4, “Adding a License Block,” on page 63](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.5, “Viewing License Status for a Workload,” on page 64](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.6, “License Warnings,” on page 64](#)

## 5.1 About Licenses

PlateSpin Transformation Manager offers full and evaluation license options.

- ♦ [Full License](#)
- ♦ [Evaluation License](#)

### 5.1.1 Full License

A full license allows you to plan and execute a workload transformation for each license instance. You purchase workload licenses in blocks from the [Customer Center \(https://www.netiq.com/customercenter/\)](https://www.netiq.com/customercenter/). Each block has a fulfillment window with an activation date that you specify.

You can install the appliance and begin setting up the projects before you need to activate licenses. You do not need a workload license until you start planning a workload transformation. Because transformation planning for a workload consumes a license, you cannot edit imported workloads until you enter a valid license key and licenses are available in an active license block.

### 5.1.2 Evaluation License

An evaluation license allows you a trial period to work with the your own data in the product. Evaluation mode allows you to use the product with an Evaluation key and 100 workload licenses.

After the Evaluation license expires, any unused licenses cannot be used to begin new workload transformations. You can continue to work in the product with licensed workloads through their entire workflow until the transformations are completed.

You can preserve the data you enter during the evaluation period by entering a Full license key to your evaluation installation. Your existing licensed workloads are not impacted. Consumed licenses do not expire. However, after you add the full license key, all unused evaluation workload licenses are automatically removed.

## 5.2 How Workloads Consume Licenses

You purchase workload licenses for PlateSpin Transformation Manager in blocks, based on the number of workloads you plan to manage for all of your projects. A workload license is not required to configure users, projects, and resources. You can import and re-import workload data multiple times without consuming a license.

---

**NOTE:** PlateSpin Transformation Manager must be able to communicate across the public Internet with the Micro Focus License Server to confirm the availability of a license before it can be consumed. Processes that trigger a license to be consumed will fail if the License Server is not accessible at that time. An error message will identify the cause of the outage.

---

Each workload will consume an available license when you first modify its data after import. The edit can be an individual edit action or a bulk edit action. Acquiring the license can take several seconds, resulting in a delayed response for the first edit on a workload. If no license is available for the workload at that time, the save action fails. You cannot modify the transformation plan for an unlicensed workload.

For a bulk edit, each unlicensed workload in the pre-selected list consumes an available license. If there are insufficient licenses available, the license and edit actions fail for any subsequent unlicensed workloads in the list.

---

**NOTE:** If licenses are not available, notify the System Administrator for PlateSpin Transformation Manager about the licenses you need.

---

When a license is consumed, the licenses remaining count decreases by one. If multiple license blocks are available, it modifies counts for the block with the next closest expiration date.

A consumed license never expires. Deleting a workload does not free the consumed license.

## 5.3 Adding a License Key

On the **Configuration > Licenses** page, the System Administrator can add the full license key or evaluation license key and view license status for current blocks of licenses for this PTM Server. The Licenses Blocks list shows each block with its purchase date, start date, expiration date, count for total licenses in the block, and count for remaining unused licenses. The list displays only license blocks with active fulfillment periods and unused licenses available. It does not include historical information about license blocks after the fulfillment period has expired or when the number of remaining unused licenses is zero (0).

- 1 (Optional) Log in to the **Customer Center** (<https://www.netiq.com/customercenter>) and acquire an evaluation license or full license key for PlateSpin Transformation Manager.
- 2 Log in to the Web Interface as a user with the System Administrator role:  
`https://<ptm-server-dns-name_or_ipaddress>:8183`
- 3 Select **Configuration > Licenses**.
- 4 Complete the following information:

**License Key:** The 14-character hexadecimal key provided by the Customer Center.

**License Type:** Full or Eval

**Remaining Licenses:** This value is automatically calculated from the license blocks that you purchase for this PlateSpin Server and that have active fulfillment periods.

**License Blocks:** This list is automatically retrieved from the Customer Center. It displays the license blocks that you have purchased for this PlateSpin Server that have active fulfillment periods with unused licenses available or that have future fulfillment periods. It does not display expired blocks or empty blocks.

- 5 Click **Save**.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.

## 5.4 Adding a License Block

You can purchase license blocks for PlateSpin Transformation Manager in the [Customer Center](https://www.netiq.com/customercenter) (<https://www.netiq.com/customercenter>). You do not manually enter the block license information. PTM automatically retrieves information about license blocks from the Customer Center and displays them in the License Blocks list on the Licenses page. In addition to updates for user actions that involve licenses, PTM refreshes the license information with the Customer Center daily at about 2:00 a.m. local time.

*Figure 5-1 License Management*

The screenshot shows the 'System Configuration' dialog box. On the left is a sidebar with a 'Licenses' tab selected, and options for 'Migrate Connector' and 'Operating Systems'. The main area is titled 'Active License Information' and contains the following fields:

- License Key: 18D234012DD345
- License Type: Full
- Remaining Licenses: 499961

Below this is a section titled 'License Blocks' containing a table with the following data:

Purchase Date ▲	Start Date	Expiration Date	Total	Remaining
Sep 3, 2013	Aug 7, 2016	Aug 7, 2017	500000	499961

At the bottom of the dialog are 'Save' and 'Close' buttons.

Each license block has an independent fulfillment period defined by the following dates:

- ♦ **Start Date:** The fulfillment date at which the block of licenses becomes active and you can begin to use its licenses.
- ♦ **Expiration Date:** The end of the fulfillment period. Any unused licenses in the block expire at that time.

A license block no longer displays in the list when either of the following conditions occurs:

- ♦ After the expiration date for the license block fulfillment period, even if unused licenses remain.

---

**NOTE:** If unused licenses are due to expire soon, you can quickly consume multiple licenses by applying a Bulk Edit change to the next planned set of workloads for one or more projects. A consumed license never expires.




---

- ♦ After all licenses in the block are consumed, even if the block fulfillment period has not expired.

## 5.5 Viewing License Status for a Workload

The Workload dialog reports the license state for the currently selected workload in the lower right of the header area. See [Table 5-1](#) for information about license states for workloads.

**Table 5-1** Workload License States

Icon	License State	Description
	Not licensed	The workload has been imported, and you have not yet edited the transformation plan information for the workload.
	Licensed	<p>You edited some information about the imported workload by using the Workload dialog or a Bulk Edit. A license is assigned permanently to this workload.</p> <p>Mouse over the icon to see the date the license was consumed. The license never expires.</p>
	License is not available	<p>You have not yet edited information for the imported workload. Because no workload licenses are currently available, any edits you attempt for the workload cannot be saved.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Notify the System Administrator that licenses are not available.</p>

## 5.6 License Warnings

A license must be available to be consumed before you begin to plan a workload's transformation. A license is available if it is unused and its fulfillment period is active. License blocks with future start dates for their fulfillment periods are currently inactive, which makes them currently unavailable. The Web Interface notifies the user if licenses are unavailable, running low, or expiring soon.


PlateSpin Transformation Manager checks the count and expiration dates of currently available licenses when the following key actions occur in the workflow.

- ♦ At login
- ♦ When the Workload dialog opens or closes
- ♦ When the Bulk Edit dialog opens or closes
- ♦ When the Configuration dialog closes



The License Warning message displays in a banner immediately below the main header of the Web Interface for the following license conditions:

- ♦ The number of currently available licenses is 50 or fewer.
- ♦ The next set of currently available licenses will expire within 7 days.

If no licenses are available for a currently selected unlicensed workload, the Workload dialog displays the No License Is Available icon  in the header area, and edits cannot be saved.

---

**NOTE:** Notify the System Administrator for PlateSpin Transformation Manager about the reported license conditions.

---

If licenses are expiring soon, you can quickly consume multiple licenses by applying a Bulk Edit change to the next planned set of workloads for one or more projects. A consumed license never expires.



# 6 Monitoring PlateSpin Migrate Connectors

The PlateSpin Transformation Manager server works with one or more instances of PlateSpin Migrate Connector that are deployed in the networks where you have source workloads. When you register a Connector with the PTM Server, the Connector is available by default to all projects that have source workloads in that network. For your first project, you can use the Connector instance on the Transformation Manager Appliance. For multiple concurrent projects, you must deploy a separate Connector instance for each project. Remember to update the configuration for the instance on the Appliance to associate it with a specific project.

---

**NOTE:** Only users assigned to the Transformation Manager System Administrator role should deploy and configure instances of Migrate Connector.

---

For more information about the Migrate Connector, see the [PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start](#).

- [Section 6.1, “About the Connectors List,” on page 67](#)
- [Section 6.2, “Viewing Migrate Connector Assignments,” on page 68](#)
- [Section 6.3, “Viewing Migrate Connector Connection Status,” on page 68](#)
- [Section 6.4, “Deleting a Connector Instance,” on page 68](#)
- [Section 6.5, “Troubleshooting Migrate Connector Connections,” on page 69](#)

## 6.1 About the Connectors List

On the **System Configuration > Connectors** page in PlateSpin Transformation Manager, you can view a list of Migrate Connector instances that are currently registered with the Transformation Manager server. It reports the current health status of the connection between them.

### Name

The FQDN name and IP address of the Connector instance. The IP address also appears in the FQDN position if the FQDN is unknown.

### Project

The project assignment for the Migrate Connector instance. An instance can be assigned at the to a single project.

The login name of the User object credentials configured for the Connector instance. This login name is used to connect to the PTM Server.

### Status

The health of the connector reports whether the Transformation Manager server can communicate with the Migrate Connector instance. Valid values are **OK** or **Warning**. If a warning is triggered, the second row displays the date and time of the last good connection.

The default Connector heartbeat communicates every 5 minutes.

## 6.2 Viewing Migrate Connector Assignments

The System Administrator, Project Manager, and Project Architect can view the list of Migrate Connectors. The list identifies the Connector instances associated with Transformation Manager and whether they are available to all Projects or to a specific project.

---

**NOTE:** To add or remove a project assignment for a Connector instance, set the `ptm_project_id` parameter in the PlateSpin Migrate Connector configuration file. See “[Configuring a Project Assignment for a Connector Instance](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.

---

**To view a list of the Connectors:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Configuration**.
- 2 In the System Configuration dialog, select **Connectors**.
- 3 View the list of Connector instances associated with Transformation Manager.
- 4 View the **Projects** column to identify which Connector instance is associated with a specific project.
- 5 When you are done, click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.

## 6.3 Viewing Migrate Connector Connection Status

The System Administrator, Project Manager, and Project Architect can view the list of Migrate Connectors. The Status column indicates the health of the connection between Transformation Manager and the Connector instance.

**To view the status of the Migrate Connectors:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Configuration**.
- 2 In the System Configuration dialog, select **Connectors**.
- 3 View the **Status** column in the **Connectors** list.
- 4 For each Connector with a Warning status:
  - 4a View the date and time of the last heartbeat received from the Connector instance.
  - 4b Go to the host server for the Connector instance to restart the process.  
See “[Starting, Restarting, or Stopping the Connector Service](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.
- 5 When you are done, click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.

## 6.4 Deleting a Connector Instance

Over time, you might have PlateSpin Migrate Connector instances that are no longer running. A System Administrator user can delete the instance from the list.

The Delete option removes the instance from the list, but it does not stop or uninstall the Connector instance. If the instance is still running, the Connector re-registers to Transformation Manager at its next heartbeat, and reappears in the list.

**To delete a Migrate Connector instance from the Connectors list:**

- 1 Stop the Connector process for each Migrate Connector instance that you want to remove from the Connectors list:
  - 1a Go to the host server for the Connector instance.
  - 1b Stop the Connector service.  
See “[Starting, Restarting, or Stopping the Connector Service](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.
- 2 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Configuration**.
- 3 In the System Configuration dialog, select **Connectors**.
- 4 Select one or more Connector instances from the list that are no longer used.
- 5 Click **Delete**, then confirm the deletion.
- 6 When you are done, click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.
- 7 (Optional) For each Connector instance that you deleted from the list, uninstall the Migrate Connector software from its Connector host:
  - 7a Log in as the `root` user to the host server for the Connector instance.
  - 7b Use the Linux `rpm` command to uninstall the PlateSpin Migrate Connector package from the Connector host server.  
See “[Uninstalling the Connector](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.

## 6.5 Troubleshooting Migrate Connector Connections

The following issues can cause connection errors for the PlateSpin Migrate Connector:

**Table 6-1** Connectivity Issues for PlateSpin Migrate Connector

Issue	Action
A required port is not configured, is misconfigured, or is being blocked by the firewall or by antivirus software.	Verify port availability.
A network outage has occurred.	Resolve the network issues.
PlateSpin Migrate Connector service has stopped running.	Log in to the Migrate Connector host server as the <code>root</code> user, and restart the Connector.
PlateSpin Migrate Connector host server is down.	Resolve the host server issues, then restart the PlateSpin Migrate Connector instance.
The Event Messaging port is not configured on the PlateSpin Migrate Server.	See “ <a href="#">Requirements for Event Messaging</a> ” and “ <a href="#">Enabling Event Messaging for PlateSpin Migration Factory</a> ” in the <i>PlateSpin Migrate User Guide</i> .
The PlateSpin Migrate server is down.	Resolve the Migrate Server issues.



# 7 Configuring PlateSpin Migrate Connector

The PlateSpin Transformation Manager server works with one or more instances of PlateSpin Migrate Connector that are deployed in the networks where you have source workloads. After you register a Connector instance with Transformation Manager, the Connector is available to all projects that have source workloads in that network. You can alternatively configure the Connector instance to be registered only for a single project. You can configure a separate Connector instance for each project.

---

**NOTE:** Only users assigned to the Transformation Manager System Administrator role can modify the global settings for PlateSpin Migrate Connector that control the default workflow settings. If you need to modify the default workflow settings, contact the System Administrator.

---

For more information about the Migrate Connector, see the [PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start](#).

- ♦ [Section 7.1, “About Global Options for Connectors,” on page 71](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.2, “Viewing Global Migrate Connector Settings,” on page 73](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.3, “Configuring Global Settings for Migrate Connector,” on page 74](#)
- ♦ [Section 7.4, “Assigning a Migrate Connector Instance,” on page 74](#)

## 7.1 About Global Options for Connectors

On the **System Configuration > Migrate Connector** page in PlateSpin Transformation Manager, a System Administrator can customize the default workflow of migration projects that leverage one or more PlateSpin Migrate servers to execute workload migrations.

---

**NOTE:** You must restart each instance of PlateSpin Migrate Connector after you modify global options in order to apply the changes.

---

- ♦ [“General Settings” on page 71](#)
- ♦ [“Migrate Server Settings” on page 72](#)
- ♦ [“Customer-Provided Scripts” on page 73](#)

### 7.1.1 General Settings

#### Missed Event Poll Interval

Specify the number of seconds between polls for workload migration events.

The default value is 300 seconds (5 minutes). A lower value puts more stress on your PTM server and Migrate servers.

#### Reconnect Retry Interval

Specify the number of seconds to wait after a connection fails to a PlateSpin Migrate server before the PTM Server tries to reconnect.

The default value is 1500 seconds (25 minutes).

### **Pause for Manual Pre-Cutover Testing**

Specify whether to pause the Transformation Workflow in a Transforming / Incremental Replication state until the Migrate user manually triggers Pre-Cutover Testing.

The default is to disable manual pre-cutover testing.

### **Pause for Manual Post-Cutover Testing**

Specify whether to pause the Transformation Workflow in a Cutover / Waiting for User state until the Migrate user manually triggers Post-Cutover Testing.

The default is to disable manual post-cutover testing.

## **7.1.2 Migrate Server Settings**

### **Add Workload to Migrate**

Specify the number of days before the start date to add the workload migration job to an auto-assigned PlateSpin Migrate server.

This option is disabled by default with a value of 0 (zero). When you submit a transformation plan, the Migrate Connector immediately auto-assigns a Migrate server, adds a workload migration job, then waits until the start date to execute the migration. The job consumes capacity and a Migrate license while it waits for start date. Consuming capacity before it is needed might block migration of workloads with earlier start dates.

Set a value of 1 or greater to enable automation control to wait until the specified pre-start-date interval to begin the preparation for migration. You can submit the workload transformation plans as they are ready without immediately consuming capacity or a license on a Migrate server.

### **Maximum Workloads**

Specify the maximum number of workloads to allow for a PlateSpin Migrate server at a time.

The default value is 100. To determine an appropriate value for your PlateSpin Migration Factory environment, see “[Performance](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide*.

---

**NOTE:** Capacity to add more workloads can be regained by doing the following:

- ♦ Wait until a pre-start-date interval before the start date to add the workload to a Migrate server. See [Add Workload to Migrate](#).
  - ♦ Remove the workload information after a successful cutover. See [Remove Workload After Cutover](#).
- 

### **Maximum Targets**

Specify the maximum number of discovered targets for a PlateSpin Migrate server.

The default value is 27.

### **Pre-Cutover Testing Days**

Specify the maximum number of before cutover to begin automated pre-cutover testing.

The default value is 3 days.

### **Verify SSL Certificate**

Specify whether to enable the validation of SSL certificates for connections to the PlateSpin Migrate servers.

The default is to disable certificate validation. Select the check box to enable it.



### **Remove Workload After Cutover**

Specify whether to clean up the workload information from the PlateSpin Migrate servers after a cutover completes.

The default is enabled. Deselect the check box to disable it.

### **Remove after (days)**

Specify the number of days after a workload is cut over to clean up the workload information from the PlateSpin Migrate server.

The default value is 3 days.

## **7.1.3 Customer-Provided Scripts**

### **Run Custom Import Script**

Specify whether to automatically execute the Custom Import callout script after initial workload discovery.

The default is disabled.

### **Run Submit Validation Script**

Specify whether to automatically execute the Submit Validation callout script before adding the workload to Migrate.

The default is disabled.

### **Run Pre-Cutover Testing Script**

Specify whether to automatically execute the Pre-Cutover Testing callout script after workload replication.

The default is disabled.

### **Run Post-Cutover Testing Script**

Specify whether to automatically execute the Post-Cutover Testing callout script after workload cutover.

The default is disabled.

Sample Custom Callout scripts are available on the PTM Appliance in the `/opt/microfocus/migrate_connector/custom_callouts/` folder.

When it first compiles Custom Callout scripts, PTM reports any discovered coding errors as sub-states for the workload in the Workloads list and Workload dialog. Pause over the error sub-state to view additional debugging information as a tooltip. Scripts that fail for coding or validation failure reasons can be retried. A script success must occur before the migration workflow can proceed. PTM forces a reload of Custom Scripts each time they are run to ensure the most recent code changes are applied.

## **7.2 Viewing Global Migrate Connector Settings**

The System Administrator, Project Manager, and Project Architect can view the global settings for the PlateSpin Migrate Connector instance associated with the PTM Server.

### **To view the connector settings:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Configuration**.
- 2 In the System Configuration dialog, select **Migrate Connector**.

- 3 View the settings:
  - ♦ [General Settings](#)
  - ♦ [Migrate Server Settings](#)
  - ♦ [Customer-Provided Scripts](#)
- 4 When you are done, click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.

## 7.3 Configuring Global Settings for Migrate Connector

The System Administrator or a user with the Administrator role can modify any of the global settings for the PlateSpin Migrate Connector instances that are assigned to the PTM Server. The changes apply throughout the product for all transformation projects.

**To configure global settings for Migrate Connector:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Configuration**.
- 2 In the System Configuration dialog, select **Migrate Connector**.
- 3 In the Migrate Connector dialog, specify appropriate option settings for the following:
  - ♦ [General Settings](#)
  - ♦ [Migrate Server Settings](#)
  - ♦ [Customer-Provided Scripts](#)
- 4 Click **Save**.
- 5 Click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.
- 6 For each PlateSpin Migrate Connector server that is connected to your PTM Server, log in to the Connector server as the `root` user and restart the Connector service. In a terminal console, enter

```
rcps_migrate_connector restart
```

## 7.4 Assigning a Migrate Connector Instance

You can assign a Migrate Connector to the PlateSpin Transformation Manager server, or to a specific project.

The PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance includes an instance of the PlateSpin Migrate Connector that is automatically installed and configured to work with the Transformation Manager server on the Appliance. It works with all projects by default. After you set up projects in Transformation Manager, you can add a `ptm_project_id` to the `/opt/microfocus/migrate_connector/config/settings.cfg` file on the Appliance to assign the Connector instance to a specific project.

You must manually configure each PlateSpin Migrate Connector instance that you deploy on your own SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11. SP4 server.

**To configure the Connector instance for a PTM server or for a specific project:**

- 1 Log in to the SLES 11 SP4 server with a `root` user account.
- 2 In a text editor, open the `/opt/microfocus/migrate_connector/config/settings.cfg` file.
- 3 Configure the values in the top section called `[PlateSpin Transformation Manager Server]`.

Option	Description
ptm_host	<p>Specify the host name or IP address of the Transformation Manager server. For example, the Migrate Connector instance on the Appliance is localhost.</p> <pre>ptm_host=localhost</pre>
ptm_port	<p>Specify the port used for the Transformation Manager server. The default port for HTTPS is 8183. The default port for HTTP is 8182.</p> <pre>ptm_port=8183</pre>
ptm_ssl	<p>Specify a value of <code>true</code> to use SSL to connect to the Transformation Manager server. Valid values are <code>true</code> and <code>false</code>.</p> <pre>ptm_ssl=true</pre>
verify_ptm_ssl_cert	<p>Specify whether you want to require the certificate to be validated for connections to the PlateSpin Transformation Manager server. Valid values are <code>false</code> or <code>true</code>. The default is to disable validation (<code>false</code>).</p> <pre>verify_ptm_ssl_cert=false</pre> <p>We recommend verifying the PTM Server certificate for remote instances of the Connector. Certificate validation is not necessary for the Connector instance installed on the Appliance.</p>
local_ptm_ssl_cert	<p>Specify local PTM server certificate store for authenticating the PTM server certificate. Specify the directory location to use a local certificate authority for certificate validation. If no value is set, the Connector will use Mozilla's root certificates.</p> <pre>local_ptm_ssl_cert=</pre>
ptm_username	<p>Specify the email address of a valid System user account on your PlateSpin Transformation Manager server that has been assigned a at least a Project Architect role at the Project level.</p> <pre>ptm_username=john.doe@example.com</pre> <p>The Transformation History can distinguish Connector-initiated actions by the User object if you create a unique dedicated User object to use for the Connector login credentials instead of using a real User object.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> We recommend that you create a dedicated user account in PlateSpin Transformation Manager for the Connector instance to use. Create this special User object as a System user, then assign it a Project Architect role at the Project level. Create a different User object for each Connector instance with permissions appropriate for its assigned project.</p>
ptm_password	<p>Specify the password for the user account.</p> <pre>ptm_password=yourpassword</pre>

Option	Description
ptm_project_id	<p>(Optional) Specify the numeric project ID for the project in Transformation Manager to restrict the Connector to a single project instead of making it available for all projects. The Connector processes only events and actions within the assigned project.</p> <pre>ptm_project_id=1234</pre> <p>To discover the numeric ID associated with a project in PlateSpin Transformation Manager:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. In the Web Interface, go to <b>Planning &gt; Projects</b>.</li> <li>2. Select the project, then click <b>Edit</b>.</li> <li>3. In the Edit Project dialog, mouse over the project name in the dialog title area. A tooltip displays the numeric ID of the project.</li> </ol>

**4** Save the file, then exit the text editor.

**5** Start or restart PlateSpin Migrate Connector. In the terminal console, enter

```
rcps_migrate_connector restart
```

For the Migrate Connector instance installed on the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance, you can alternatively restart the Connector from the Appliance Management Console.

# 8

## Configuring Operating Systems

The System Administrator manages a list of available Operating System Types (OS Types) for the product in the System Configuration settings. The OS Types are available for use by Project Managers and Project Architects as they import original workloads or configure the proposed workloads.

---

**NOTE:** Only the System Administrator can create, edit, and delete OS Types. If you need additional OS Types for your transformation projects, contact the System Administrator.

---

- ♦ [Section 8.1, “About Operating System Types,” on page 77](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.2, “Viewing the List of Operating System Types,” on page 78](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.3, “Creating an Operating System Type,” on page 78](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.4, “Editing an Operating System Type,” on page 78](#)
- ♦ [Section 8.5, “Deleting an Operating System Type,” on page 79](#)

### 8.1 About Operating System Types

Each OS Type uniquely represents a distribution of an operating system. The OS objects you create can be as general or as specific as necessary to meet your needs.

#### Name

Specify a textual name for the operating system that is unique in your PlateSpin Transformation Manager environment.

#### Description

Specify a brief description of the operating system.

#### Family

Select the appropriate operating system family from the following available options:

CentOS  
Citrix  
Linux  
NetWare/OES  
Other  
Red Hat Linux  
Solaris  
SUSE Linux  
Ubuntu  
Unknown  
VMware ESX  
Windows

## Architecture

Select the appropriate processor architecture from the following available options:

- x32 (32 bit)
- x64 (64 bit)

## 8.2 Viewing the List of Operating System Types

The System Administrator, Project Manager, and Project Architect can view the master Operating Systems list for the product. The OS Type values are available for all transformation projects.

**To view a list of OS Types:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Configuration**.
- 2 In the System Configuration dialog, select **Operating Systems**.
- 3 Scroll to view the list of OS Types.
- 4 When you are done, click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.

## 8.3 Creating an Operating System Type

The System Administrator can create new operating system components to make them available for all transformation projects.

**To create an OS Type:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Configuration**.
- 2 In the System Configuration dialog, select **Operating Systems**.
- 3 Click **Create**.
- 4 In the Create Operating System dialog, specify the following information:
  - ♦ **Name**
  - ♦ **Description**
  - ♦ **Family**
  - ♦ **Architecture**
- 5 Click **Save** to create the operating system component.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.

## 8.4 Editing an Operating System Type

The System Administrator can modify any operating system component, including the predefined OS Types. The changes apply throughout the product for all transformation projects.

**To edit an OS Type:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Configuration**.
- 2 In the System Configuration dialog, select **Operating Systems**.
- 3 Click **Edit**.

- 4 In the Edit Operating System dialog, specify the following information:
  - ♦ [Name](#)
  - ♦ [Description](#)
  - ♦ [Family](#)
  - ♦ [Architecture](#)
- 5 Click **Save** to update the operating system component.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.

## 8.5 Deleting an Operating System Type

The System Administrator can delete any operating system from the list of available Operating Systems. The deletion removes the OS setting for all transformation projects.

---

**NOTE:** Deleting an OS can affect the readiness of planned workloads that have this OS Type assigned to them.

---

### To delete an OS Type:

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Configuration**.
- 2 In the System Configuration dialog, select **Operating Systems**.
- 3 Select the appropriate OS Type from the list of operating systems.
- 4 Click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
- 5 Click **Close** to exit the System Configuration dialog.





# A Configuring a Custom UI Theme for the Web Interface

PlateSpin Transformation Manager enables you to create a custom look-and-feel for the Web Interface to suit your business needs. You can specify preferences for the following aspects of the UI theme:

- ♦ Product name
- ♦ Icons for various objects in the Configuration, Dashboard, Resources, Projects, Users, and Workloads pages
- ♦ Color settings that affect text, titles, underscores, buttons, shadings, and so on throughout the interface

The configurable components are available on the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance. For information about how to set up and implement your custom UI theme, see “[Configuring a Custom UI Theme for the Web Interface](#)” in the *PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance Guide*.





# Users

Access to PlateSpin Transformation Manager requires a user account. Through the user account, a user receives permissions to perform tasks for one or more assigned transformation projects. The default System Administrator user and other users assigned to the System Administrator role have the permissions necessary to create, manage, and delete users, groups, and organizations. This section describes common user management tasks.

- ♦ [Chapter 9, “Overview of PlateSpin User Management,” on page 85](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 10, “Managing Organizations,” on page 91](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 11, “Managing Users,” on page 95](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 12, “Managing Groups,” on page 99](#)



# 9 Overview of PlateSpin User Management

For PlateSpin Transformation Manager, a user is any individual who can access Transformation Manager to plan, monitor, or execute transformation projects. Transformation Manager creates a user account during the installation process, and assigns the user to the System Administrator role. This default user is initially responsible for creating user accounts and assigning roles to them, as well as creating organizations and groups.

Transformation Manager stores user account information and authenticates the user to allow access. Access controls govern the information users can see and the actions they can perform.

- ♦ [Section 9.1, “System Users and Organization Users,” on page 85](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.2, “Roles,” on page 85](#)
- ♦ [Section 9.3, “Example: Digital Airlines Users,” on page 88](#)

## 9.1 System Users and Organization Users

As the default System Administrator user, you must add user accounts and assign them to project roles to enable other users to manage or view project information. When you create a user or group, you can set the user's scope at one of two levels:

- ♦ **System:** System users and groups have only the privileges associated with their assigned roles. You can assign system users to the following:
  - ♦ System Administrator role (members of the Administrators group)
  - ♦ Project Manager
  - ♦ Project Architect
  - ♦ Migration Specialist
  - ♦ Dashboard Viewer role
  - ♦ System groups

You can also assign system groups to the roles, and then manage group membership to make management easier.

- ♦ **Organization:** Organization users and groups have only the privileges associated with their assigned roles. You can assign organization users to the following:
  - ♦ Dashboard Viewer role

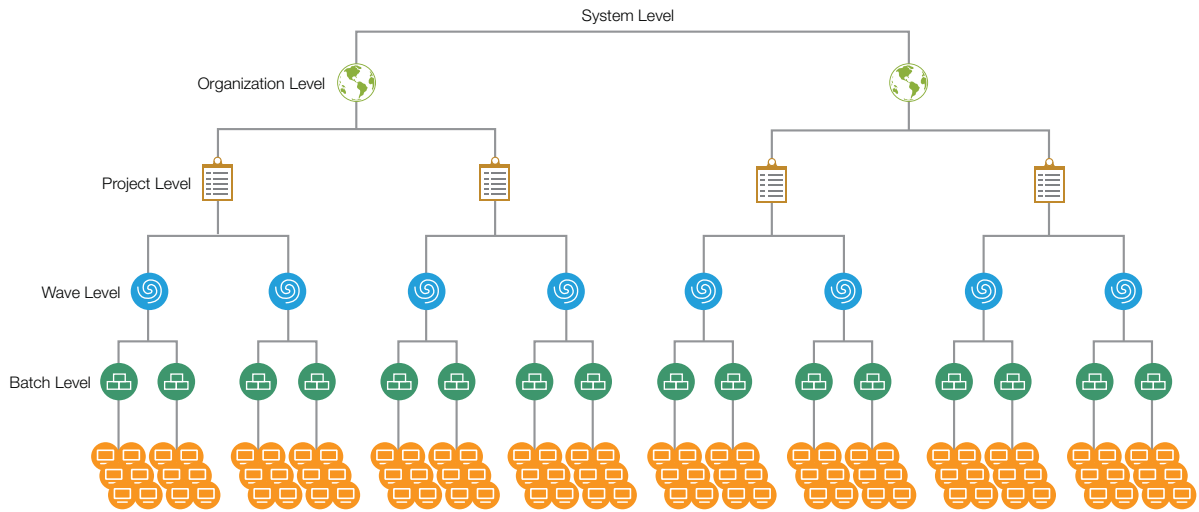
## 9.2 Roles

You can assign users or groups to roles that let them plan, monitor, and execute transformation projects. Transformation Manager provides five roles: System Administrator, Project Manager, Project Architect, Migration Specialist, and Dashboard Viewer. Each role carries its own set of responsibilities in the PTM environment.

Roles can be assigned directly or inherited. Inherited roles can be set for system users or groups at the System, Organization, Project, Wave, or Batch level. Inherited roles can be set for organization users or groups at the Organization, Project, Wave, or Batch level. The inherited roles apply across

all components in that level for existing and new components, as illustrated in [Figure 9-1](#). For example, if you assign the system user account for John as the Project Manager for an organization, the organization's existing and new projects automatically inherit the setting.

**Figure 9-1** Scope of Permissions for Inherited Roles



- ♦ [System Administrator Role](#)
- ♦ [Project Manager Role](#)
- ♦ [Project Architect Role](#)
- ♦ [Migration Specialist Role](#)
- ♦ [Dashboard Viewer Role](#)

## 9.2.1 System Administrator Role

The System Administrator role has full privileges in Transformation Manager. The initial user account that you create during the installation automatically has this role. You can add system users or system groups to the Administrators group to assign this role. The System Administrator typically performs the following tasks:

- ♦ Configures, maintains, and monitors the health of the PTM Server.
- ♦ Has all privileges throughout the product.
- ♦ Has exclusive privileges to perform the following tasks:
  - ♦ Create and delete organizations.
  - ♦ Create and delete projects.
  - ♦ Create and delete Operating System types.
  - ♦ Assign users and groups to roles at the Organization level.
  - ♦ Assign users and groups to the Project Manager role.
- ♦ Can perform all tasks for every role in any project.

## 9.2.2 Project Manager Role

The Project Manager role can be a user or group. For an assigned project, this role has the permissions necessary to perform the following tasks:

- ♦ Manages the project.
- ♦ Creates and deletes users.
- ♦ Creates and deletes non-administrator groups, and assigns members to them.
- ♦ Assigns users or groups to the Project Architect, Migration Specialist, and Dashboard Viewer roles.
- ♦ Tracks project progress and core statistics, using the dashboard.
- ♦ Performs any of the Project Architect tasks.
  - ♦ Creates and deletes waves, batches, and applications.
  - ♦ Bulk imports project workloads.
  - ♦ Creates and deletes resources.
  - ♦ Defines proposed workloads.
  - ♦ Submits workloads that are ready for transformation, or withdraws them if transformation changes are needed.

## 9.2.3 Project Architect Role

The Project Architect role can be user or group. For an assigned project, this role has the permissions necessary to perform the following tasks:

- ♦ Views all information for the project.
- ♦ Creates and deletes waves, batches, and applications.
- ♦ Assigns users or groups to the Migration Specialist role for waves and batches.
- ♦ Bulk imports project workloads.
- ♦ Creates and deletes resources.
- ♦ Defines proposed workloads.
- ♦ Submits workloads that are ready for transformation, or withdraws them if transformation changes are needed.
- ♦ Tracks project progress and core statistics, using the dashboard.
- ♦ Can execute the individual migrations, according to the project plan.

## 9.2.4 Migration Specialist Role

The Migration Specialist role can be a user or group. For an assigned project, wave or batch, this role has the permissions necessary to perform the following tasks:

- ♦ Views information for the project's waves, batches, and workloads.
- ♦ Views information for the project's resources.
- ♦ Executes the individual migrations, according to the project plan.
- ♦ Tracks project progress and core statistics, using the dashboard.

## 9.2.5 Dashboard Viewer Role

The Dashboard Viewer role can be a user or group. The Dashboard Viewer role has the permissions necessary to view the dashboard information only for an assigned organization, project, wave, or batch. Inherited permissions apply to this role in the child containers if you assign this role at the system, organization, project, wave, or batch level.

## 9.3 Example: Digital Airlines Users

Each project typically has one manager. In this example, the Digital Airlines organization has multiple projects. They want three users to share the project manager role across all of their projects. You want to manage their role assignments in a group instead of individually. The group will receive access rights at the Organization level so that its members can manage any of the organization's projects.

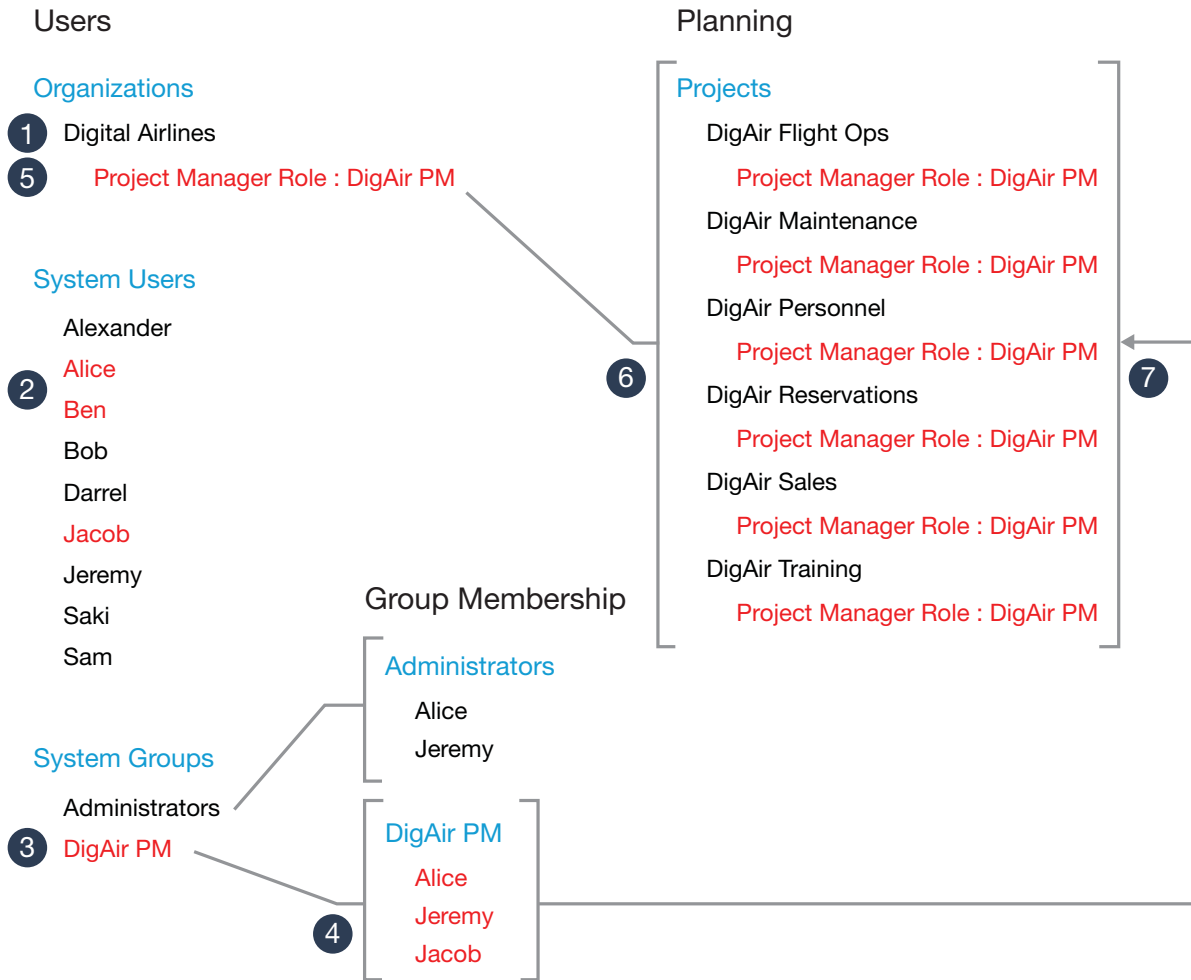
As a System Administrator user (a member of the Administrators group), you perform the following tasks, as shown in [Figure 9-2](#):

1. Create an organization account for Digital Airlines.
2. Create system user accounts for workers Alice, Ben, and Jacob.
3. Create a system group `DigAir PM`.
4. Assign the three system users to this group.
5. Assign the `DigAir PM` group to the role of Project Manager for the Digital Airlines organization at the Organization level.
6. Create projects for Digital Airlines.
7. Each project for the organization automatically inherits the group in the Project Manager role.

With this configuration, any member of the `DigAir PM` group can manage any project for the Digital Airlines organization.



**Figure 9-2** Assigning a Group to the Project Manager Role



You can assign user permissions directly, or indirectly through group membership. If you assign a user to multiple roles, the user's permissions in the Web Interface are cumulative.

For example, Alice is a system user who is currently assigned to the `DigAir PM` group. You also want her to perform the System Administrator role for the Web Interface. You can add Alice as a member of the `Administrators` group to grant her the associated permissions for the System Administrator role. See the `Administrators` group membership in [Figure 9-2](#).

The Project Manager role provides a user the ability to create, modify, and delete users and groups, without granting the additional authority for tasks associated with the System Administrator role. For example, you can assign Alice the Project Manager role. After Alice creates users and groups, the project managers for the Digital Airlines projects (that is, member in the `DigAir PM` group) can assign subordinate project roles to them.



# 10 Managing Organizations

An organization represents the logical association to some organizational entity in your business environment. For example, if you are data center provider, each organization might represent a company. If you are an enterprise IT department, an organization might represent a company site, a business unit or department, or a cost center within your company.

---

**Users Who Can Perform These Tasks:** System Administrator or System Administrator role

---

- ♦ [Section 10.1, “About Organizations,” on page 91](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.2, “Creating an Organization,” on page 92](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.3, “Uploading an Organization Logo,” on page 93](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.4, “Editing an Organization,” on page 93](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.5, “Removing an Organization,” on page 94](#)

## 10.1 About Organizations

Transformation Manager allows you to track the following information for the organization accounts:

**Name:** Specify a name for the organization that is unique in the PTM system. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Description:** (Optional) Specify a brief description of the organization. This text appears by default in the Organizations list.

**Image:** (Optional) Upload an image to represent the organization.

**Associations:** The following tabs allow you to view or manage the components associated with the organization. Some options might not be available, depending on the user’s assigned role.

- ♦ **Planning**
  - ♦ Projects (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Chapter 15, “Managing Projects,” on page 115](#).
- ♦ **Resources**
  - ♦ Credentials (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Section 23, “Managing Credentials Resources,” on page 195](#).
  - ♦ Hosts - See [Section 24, “Managing Host Resources,” on page 201](#).
    - ♦ Source (View)
    - ♦ Target (Create, Edit, View, Delete)
  - ♦ Networks - See [Section 26, “Managing Network Resources,” on page 213](#).
    - ♦ Source (View)
    - ♦ Target (Create, Edit, View, Delete)

- ♦ Datastores - See [Section 27, “Managing Datastore Resources,”](#) on page 217.
  - ♦ Source (View)
  - ♦ Target (Create, Edit, View, Delete)
- ♦ Environments (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Section 29, “Managing Environment Resources,”](#) on page 225.
- ♦ Applications (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Chapter 18, “Managing Applications,”](#) on page 129.
- ♦ Migration Servers (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Section 25, “Managing Migration Server Resources,”](#) on page 209.
- ♦ Resource Pools (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Section 28, “Managing Resource Pool Resources,”](#) on page 221.
- ♦ **Users**

Project role assignments at the project level are automatically inherited by their child components.

  - ♦ Dashboard Viewer (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Dashboard Viewer Role”](#) on page 88.
  - ♦ Migration Specialist (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Migration Specialist Role”](#) on page 87.
  - ♦ Project Architect (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Project Architect Role”](#) on page 87.
  - ♦ Project Manager (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Project Manager Role”](#) on page 87.

## 10.2 Creating an Organization

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Organizations** tab.
- 3 Click **Create**.
- 4 In the Create Organization dialog, specify a name for the organization that is unique within the PTM system.
- 5 (Optional) Specify a brief textual description of the organization.
- 6 (Optional) Upload an image to represent the organization. Mouse-over the image pane, click **Upload New Image**, browse to locate and select the image that you want to use for the organization, then click **Open**.
- 7 Click **Save** to create the organization instance and enable the **Associations** pane.
- 8 (Optional) In the **Associations** pane, define the associations for the organization.

### Planning

- ♦ Projects (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Chapter 15, “Managing Projects,”](#) on page 115.

### Resources

- ♦ Credentials (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Section 23, “Managing Credentials Resources,”](#) on page 195.
- ♦ Hosts - See [Section 24, “Managing Host Resources,”](#) on page 201.
  - ♦ Source (View)
  - ♦ Target (Create, Edit, View, Delete)
- ♦ Networks - See [Section 26, “Managing Network Resources,”](#) on page 213.
  - ♦ Source (View)
  - ♦ Target (Create, Edit, View, Delete)

- ♦ Datastores - See [Section 27, “Managing Datastore Resources,”](#) on page 217.
  - ♦ Source (View)
  - ♦ Target (Create, Edit, View, Delete)
- ♦ Environments (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Section 29, “Managing Environment Resources,”](#) on page 225.
- ♦ Applications (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Chapter 18, “Managing Applications,”](#) on page 129.
- ♦ Migration Servers (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Section 25, “Managing Migration Server Resources,”](#) on page 209.
- ♦ Resource Pools (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [Section 28, “Managing Resource Pool Resources,”](#) on page 221.

#### Users

- ♦ Dashboard Viewer (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Dashboard Viewer Role”](#) on page 88.
- ♦ Migration Specialist (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Migration Specialist Role”](#) on page 87.
- ♦ Project Architect (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Project Architect Role”](#) on page 87.
- ♦ Project Manager (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Project Manager Role”](#) on page 87.

9 Click **Save**.

10 Click **Close**.

## 10.3 Uploading an Organization Logo

To add a logo for an organization:

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Organizations** tab.
- 3 Select the organization, then click **Edit**.
- 4 Upload an image to represent the organization. Mouse-over the image pane, click **Upload New Image**, browse to locate and select the image that you want to use for the organization, then click **Open**.
- 5 Click **Save**.
- 6 Click **Close**.

## 10.4 Editing an Organization

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Organizations** tab.
- 3 In the Organizations list, double-click the organization, or select the organization and click **Edit**.
- 4 (Optional) Specify a brief textual description of the organization.
- 5 (Optional) Upload an image to represent the organization. Mouse-over the image pane, click **Upload New Image**, browse to locate and select the image that you want to use for the organization, then click **Open**.
- 6 In the **Associations** pane, view or modify the Associations information.
  - ♦ Projects - See [Chapter 15, “Managing Projects,”](#) on page 115.

- ♦ Users
    - ♦ Dashboard Viewer - See [“Dashboard Viewer Role”](#) on page 88.
    - ♦ Migration Specialist - See [“Migration Specialist Role”](#) on page 87.
    - ♦ Project Architect - See [“Project Architect Role”](#) on page 87.
    - ♦ Project Manager - See [“Project Manager Role”](#) on page 87.
  - ♦ Credentials - See [Section 23, “Managing Credentials Resources,”](#) on page 195.
  - ♦ Hosts - See [Section 24, “Managing Host Resources,”](#) on page 201.
  - ♦ Networks - See [Section 26, “Managing Network Resources,”](#) on page 213.
  - ♦ Datastores - See [Section 27, “Managing Datastore Resources,”](#) on page 217.
  - ♦ Environments - See [Section 29, “Managing Environment Resources,”](#) on page 225.
  - ♦ Applications - See [Chapter 18, “Managing Applications,”](#) on page 129.
  - ♦ Migration Servers - See [Section 25, “Managing Migration Server Resources,”](#) on page 209.
  - ♦ Resource Pools - See [Section 28, “Managing Resource Pool Resources,”](#) on page 221.
- 7 If you modified information, click **Save**.
- 8 Click **Close**.

## 10.5 Removing an Organization

When you remove an organization, the associations set up for the organization are automatically deleted.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Organizations** tab.
- 3 In the Organizations list, select the organization and click **Delete**.
- 4 Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion, or click **No** to keep the organization.

# 11

## Managing Users

Transformation Manager creates a user account during the installation process, and assigns this user to the System Administrator role. This default System Administrator initially creates user accounts, as well as organizations and groups. You cannot delete the default System Administrator user.

---

**Users Who Can Perform These Tasks:** System Administrator, or System Administrator role

---

- ♦ [Section 11.1, “About Users,” on page 95](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.2, “Viewing Users,” on page 96](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.3, “Creating a User,” on page 96](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.4, “Creating a User for Connector Login,” on page 96](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.5, “Editing a User,” on page 97](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.6, “Changing a User Password,” on page 97](#)
- ♦ [Section 11.7, “Removing a User,” on page 98](#)

### 11.1 About Users

PlateSpin Transformation Manager allows you to track the following information for users:

**Full Name:** Specify a first and last name for the user. Names can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Email Address:** Specify an email address for the user that is unique in the PTM system.

**Phone Number:** (Optional) Specify a contact phone number for the user.

**Password:** Specify a password for the user account in the PTM system. Type it again to confirm. The password length must be a minimum of 5 characters. After you set up a role for the user account, send the initial password to the user. The user logs in with the initial password, and then sets their preferred password.

---

**NOTE:** Passwords are local to the product. They are stored securely in the PTM database.

---

**Scope:** Specify whether the user's privileges apply at the system or organization level in the PTM system. After the user's scope is set, it cannot be modified. Organization scope is used only for users in a Dashboard Viewer role for their organization's projects.

**Membership and Access:** The following tabs allow you to view or manage the user's access to information in the transformation environment. Some options might not be available, depending on the user's assigned role.

- ♦ All Roles
- ♦ System (Add, Remove)
- ♦ Organization (Add, Remove)
- ♦ Project (Add, Remove)

- ♦ Wave (Add, Remove)
- ♦ Batch (Add, Remove)
- ♦ Group Membership (View, Add, Remove)

## 11.2 Viewing Users

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Users** tab.
- 3 In the Users list, double-click the user, or select the user and click **View**.
- 4 In the View User dialog, view the User and the Membership and Access information.
- 5 Click **Close**.

## 11.3 Creating a User

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Users** tab.
- 3 Click **Create**.
- 4 In the User pane of the Create User dialog, specify the following information for the user account:
  - ♦ First and last name
  - ♦ Email address
  - ♦ Phone number (optional)
  - ♦ Password and Confirm Password
  - ♦ Scope (System or Organization)
- 5 Click **Save** to create the user account instance and enable the **Membership and Access** pane.
- 6 In the **Membership and Access** pane, define the permissions and roles assignments for the user account.
- 7 Click **Save**.
- 8 Click **Close**.

## 11.4 Creating a User for Connector Login

We recommend that you create a unique user login credential for each PlateSpin Migrate Connector instance. This user identity enables the Transformation History to clearly distinguish Connector actions from those performed by real users. Create this special user as a System user, then assign it a Project Architect role at the Project level. Create a different User object for each Connector instance with permissions appropriate for its assigned project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Users** tab.
- 3 Click **Create**.



- 4 In the User pane of the Create User dialog, specify the following information for the user account:
  - ♦ First and last name
  - ♦ Email address
  - ♦ Phone number (optional)
  - ♦ Password and Confirm Password
  - ♦ Scope: System
- 5 Click **Save** to create the user account instance and enable the **Membership and Access** pane.
- 6 In the **Membership and Access** pane, define the permissions and role assignment for the user account appropriate for the PlateSpin Migrate Connector instance.
  - 6a Select the Project tab.
  - 6b In the Project tab toolbar, select the **Project Architect** role (minimum permissions required) or the Project Manager role.
  - 6c Click **Add**, select the project that you will assign to the Migrate Connector instance, then click OK.
- 7 Click **Save**.
- 8 Click **Close**.
- 9 Use the user login information when you configure the Connector instance.

See “[Configuring a Project Assignment for a Connector Instance](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.

## 11.5 Editing a User

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Users** tab.
- 3 In the Users list, double-click the user, or select the user and click **Edit**.
- 4 In the Edit User dialog, view or modify the User information or the Membership and Access information.
- 5 If you modified information, click **Save**.
- 6 Click **Close**.

## 11.6 Changing a User Password

A System Administrator can change the password for any user account. A non-administrator user can change the password associated with the user account assigned to them.

The user logs in with the initial password sent to them by the System Administrator, and then sets a preferred password. The new password is stored, and takes effect the next time the user logs in for a session.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Users** tab.
- 3 In the Users list, double-click the user name, or select the user name and click **Edit**.
- 4 In the Edit User dialog, type the preferred password, then type it again to confirm the change.

- 5 Click **Save**.
- 6 Click **Close**.

## 11.7 Removing a User

When you remove a user, the roles and permissions set up for the user are automatically removed.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Users** tab.
- 3 In the Users list, select the user and click **Delete**.
- 4 Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion, or click **No** to keep the user.

# 12 Managing Groups

You can also associate users with groups to more efficiently manage access. Members of a group inherit the access controls assigned to the group.

- ♦ [Section 12.1, “About Groups,” on page 99](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.2, “Viewing Groups,” on page 100](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.3, “Creating a Group,” on page 100](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.4, “Editing a Group,” on page 100](#)
- ♦ [Section 12.5, “Removing a Group,” on page 101](#)

## 12.1 About Groups

Transformation Manager allows you to track the following information for groups:

**Full Name:** Specify a name for the group account that is unique in the PTM system. Names can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Email Address:** (Optional) Specify an email address for the group that is unique in the PTM system.

**Scope:** Specify whether the user's privileges apply at the system or organization level in the PTM system. After the user's scope is set, it cannot be modified. Organization scope is used only for groups in a Dashboard Viewer role for their organization's projects.

**Membership and Access:** The following tabs allow you to view or manage the group's access to information in the transformation environment. Some options might not be available, depending on the group's assigned role.

- ♦ All Roles
- ♦ System (Add, Remove)
- ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Migration Specialist (Add, Remove)
  - ♦ Project Architect (Add, Remove)
  - ♦ Project Manager (Add, Remove)
- ♦ Project
  - ♦ Migration Specialist (Add, Remove)
  - ♦ Project Architect (Add, Remove)
  - ♦ Project Manager (Add, Remove)
- ♦ Wave
  - ♦ Migration Specialist (Add, Remove)
  - ♦ Project Architect (Add, Remove)

- ♦ Batch
  - ♦ Migration Specialist (Add, Remove)
  - ♦ Project Architect (Add, Remove)
- ♦ Members (View, Add, Remove)

## 12.2 Viewing Groups

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Group** tab.
- 3 In the Group list, double-click the group, or select the group and click **View**.
- 4 In the View Group dialog, view the Group and the Membership and Access information.
- 5 Click **Close**.

## 12.3 Creating a Group

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Groups** tab.
- 3 Click **Create**.
- 4 In the Group pane of the Create Group dialog, specify the following information for the group account:
  - ♦ Full Name
  - ♦ Email address
  - ♦ Scope (System or Organization)
- 5 Click **Save** to create the group account instance and enable the **Membership and Access** pane.
- 6 In the **Membership and Access** pane, define the roles and member assignments for the group account.
- 7 Click **Save**.
- 8 Click **Close**.

## 12.4 Editing a Group

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Group** tab.
- 3 In the Group list, double-click the group, or select the group and click **Edit**.
- 4 In the Edit Group dialog, view or modify the Group and the Membership and Access information.
- 5 If you modified information, click **Save**.
- 6 Click **Close**.

## 12.5 Removing a Group

When you remove a group, the roles and membership set up for the group are automatically removed.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Users**.
- 2 Select the **Groups** tab.
- 3 In the Groups list, select the group and click **Delete**.
- 4 Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion, or click **No** to keep the group.



# IV Planning Transformation Projects

PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides the tools you need to create elements and organize them to define your transformation projects.

- ♦ [Chapter 13, “Overview of Project Planning,” on page 105](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 14, “Dashboard,” on page 109](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 15, “Managing Projects,” on page 115](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 16, “Managing Waves,” on page 121](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 17, “Managing Batches,” on page 125](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 18, “Managing Applications,” on page 129](#)





# 13 Overview of Project Planning

PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides planning tools that allow you to schedule the transformations for large projects with thousands to tens of thousands of workloads. You can schedule the transformations to occur in waves with smaller groupings of batches in each wave.

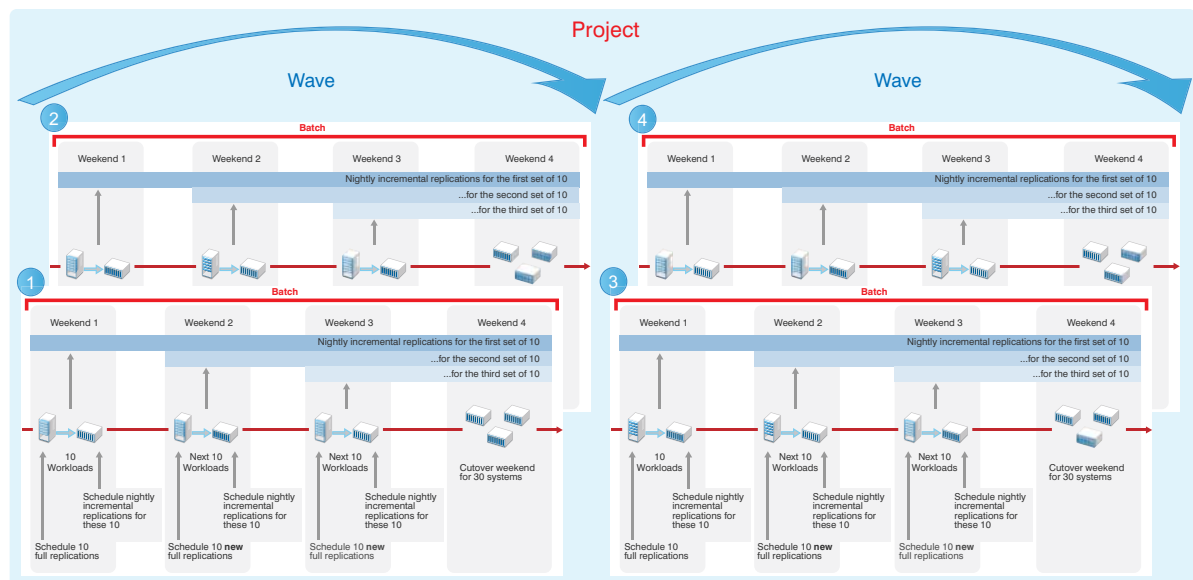
- ♦ [Section 13.1, “Planning Waves and Batches,”](#) on page 105
- ♦ [Section 13.2, “Prerequisites for Planning,”](#) on page 106
- ♦ [Section 13.3, “Granting Access,”](#) on page 106
- ♦ [Section 13.4, “Transforming Workloads,”](#) on page 106
- ♦ [Section 13.5, “Scheduling Dates,”](#) on page 107

## 13.1 Planning Waves and Batches

Large-scale IT transformation projects typically occur over an extended period in a production environment that might span multiple locations. Future network activities and conditions can be difficult to predict and details are as yet unknown. Complex projects with massive numbers of workloads might take months or even years to complete. It might be possible to plan details only a few months in advance.

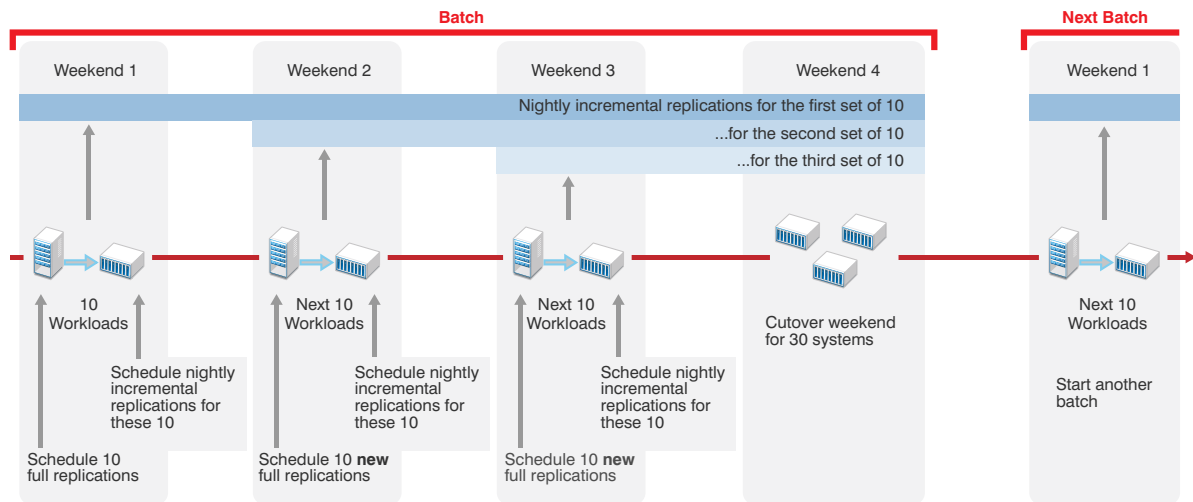
PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports rolling wave planning to accommodate the near-term and long-term planning of your transformation tasks. You can organize the project’s transformation tasks in waves, as shown in [Figure 13-1](#). For near-term waves, you can plan the tasks in detail. You can refine the transformation plan for future waves as newer and better information becomes available.

**Figure 13-1** Wave Planning



Within a wave, batches group like workloads that you want to transform together. Batches can be more easily scheduled during intervals when network resources are available. You can deliver valuable results in each batch and wave. Schedules are flexible. You can coordinate the start dates and cutover dates with stakeholders to work around planned events that are critical to the business.

**Figure 13-2** Batch Planning



## 13.2 Prerequisites for Planning

When you create a project, you must associate it with a specific organization. Before you can add a project, you must create the parent organization to ensure that it is available when you create its transformation projects. Waves, batches, applications, and workloads are all child containers of their parent project.

## 13.3 Granting Access

PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides the following roles for managing your project:

- ♦ **Project Manager:** The Project Manager is responsible for managing all aspects of the project.
- ♦ **Project Architect:** The Project Architect is responsible for configuring transformation plans for the workloads, scheduling the transformations, and monitoring the health of transformations.
- ♦ **Migration Specialists:** The Migration Specialists are responsible for executing the transformations.
- ♦ **Dashboard Viewer:** The Dashboard Viewers are stakeholders who want to observe the progress and metrics for projects.

## 13.4 Transforming Workloads

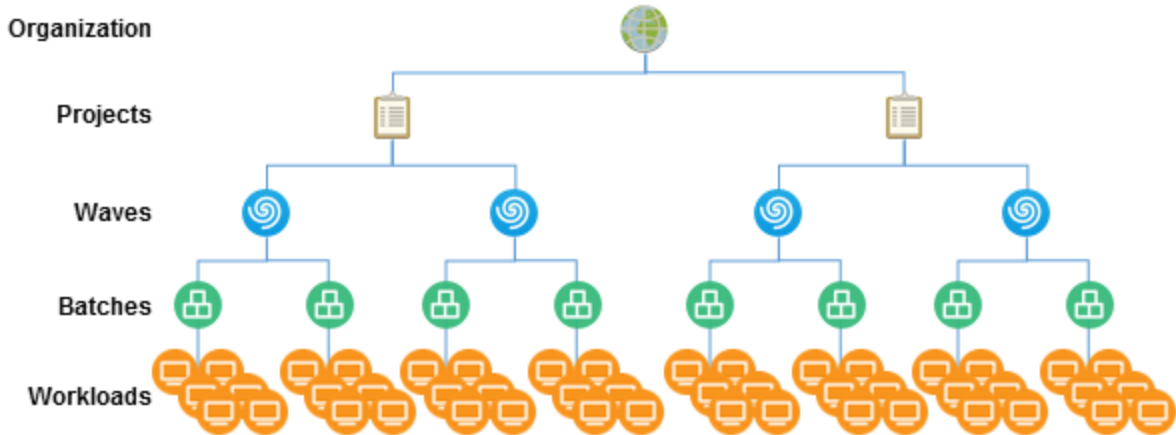
Transforming workloads from their current operational mode to a future operational mode is the fundamental management goal for your transformation project. A transformation plan includes the following information:

- ♦ Dependencies between workloads
- ♦ Data about each original workload and its proposed workload

- ♦ The sequence for workload tasks
- ♦ When tasks need to be executed

Figure 13-3 shows the parent-child relationships between planning objects: Organizations, Projects, Waves, Batches, and Workloads.

**Figure 13-3** Parent-Child Relationships of Planning Objects



## 13.5 Scheduling Dates

Project dates can be set according to your business and network needs. Business factors include your project priorities, task dependencies, and the availability of resources. Network environmental factors include available bandwidth, connection speeds, and the amount of data being transformed.

You might have a specific cutover date in mind, or simply want to create a plan to get the work accomplished as efficiently and quickly as you can. External events might determine when certain tasks must be completed. IT and human resources availability also constrain your schedule.

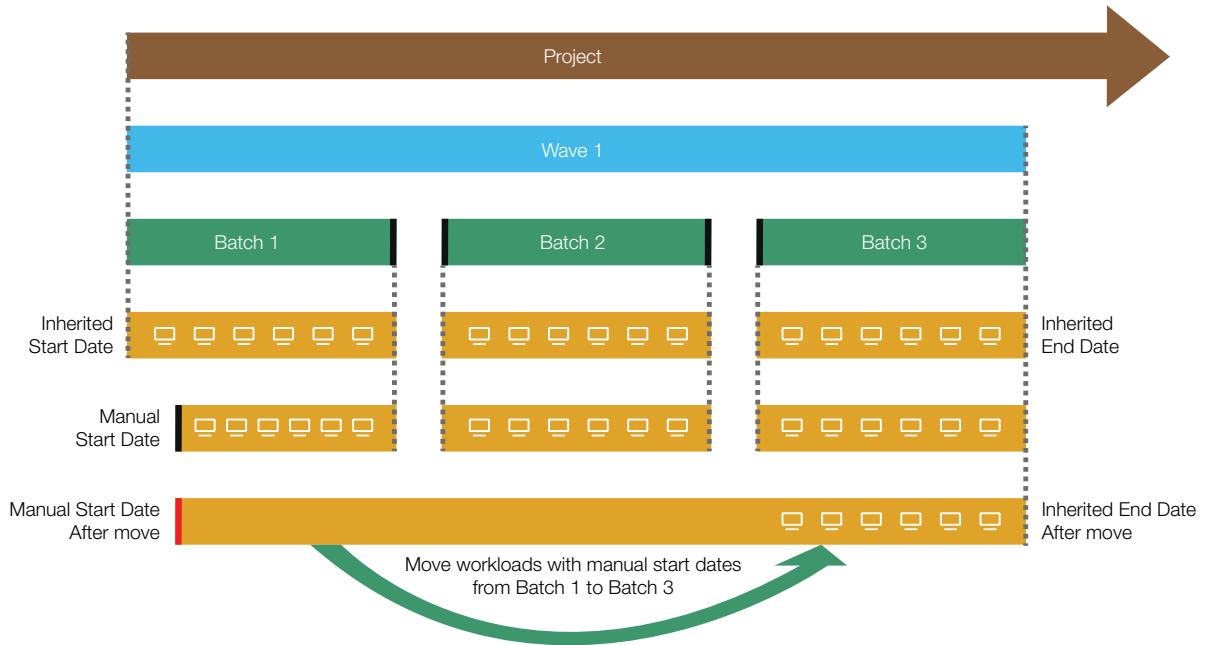
Dates for waves and batches can be set manually or inherited from their parent objects. Dates of child objects must fall within the execution window of its parent object.

Figure 13-4 demonstrates how the dates flow down from parent to child. Manually set dates appear in a black font in fields and tables. Inherited dates appear in a gray font in fields and tables.

If you set dates manually, the date setting overrides inheritance rules. If you move a workload with a manual date from one batch to another, the manual date setting does not change, but the inherited date setting changes automatically.

Figure 13-4 shows how the manual date remains the same after you move the workloads from Batch 1 to Batch 3. If the manual date falls outside the execution window for the new batch, the date appears in a red font in fields and tables. You must re-configure the dates for workloads if their execution windows extend outside their new parent window.

Figure 13-4 Inherited Start Date and End Date



**NOTE:** Dates display in the format of your computer browser's Locale setting.

PlateSpin Transformation Manager displays an object's dates in the following font colors, depending on how the object obtained the setting:

Font Color for Dates	Condition
Gray	The date is inherited from its parent object.
Black	The date has been set directly on the object. The new date is automatically inherited by child objects.
Red	The date does occurs before or after the execution window set on the parent object: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ The object's start date occurs before the parent's start date.</li><li>♦ The object's end or cutover date occurs after the parent's end or cutover date.</li></ul>

# 14 Dashboard

The PlateSpin Transformation Manager Dashboard displays a summary view of status and metrics for the project and individual workloads. It also provides an events

- ♦ [Section 14.1, “Using the Dashboard,” on page 109](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.2, “Viewing Counts and Status for a Project, Wave, or Batch,” on page 112](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.3, “Viewing Workload Status,” on page 113](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.4, “What’s Happening,” on page 113](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.5, “Bookmarks,” on page 113](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.6, “Recently Viewed,” on page 114](#)

## 14.1 Using the Dashboard

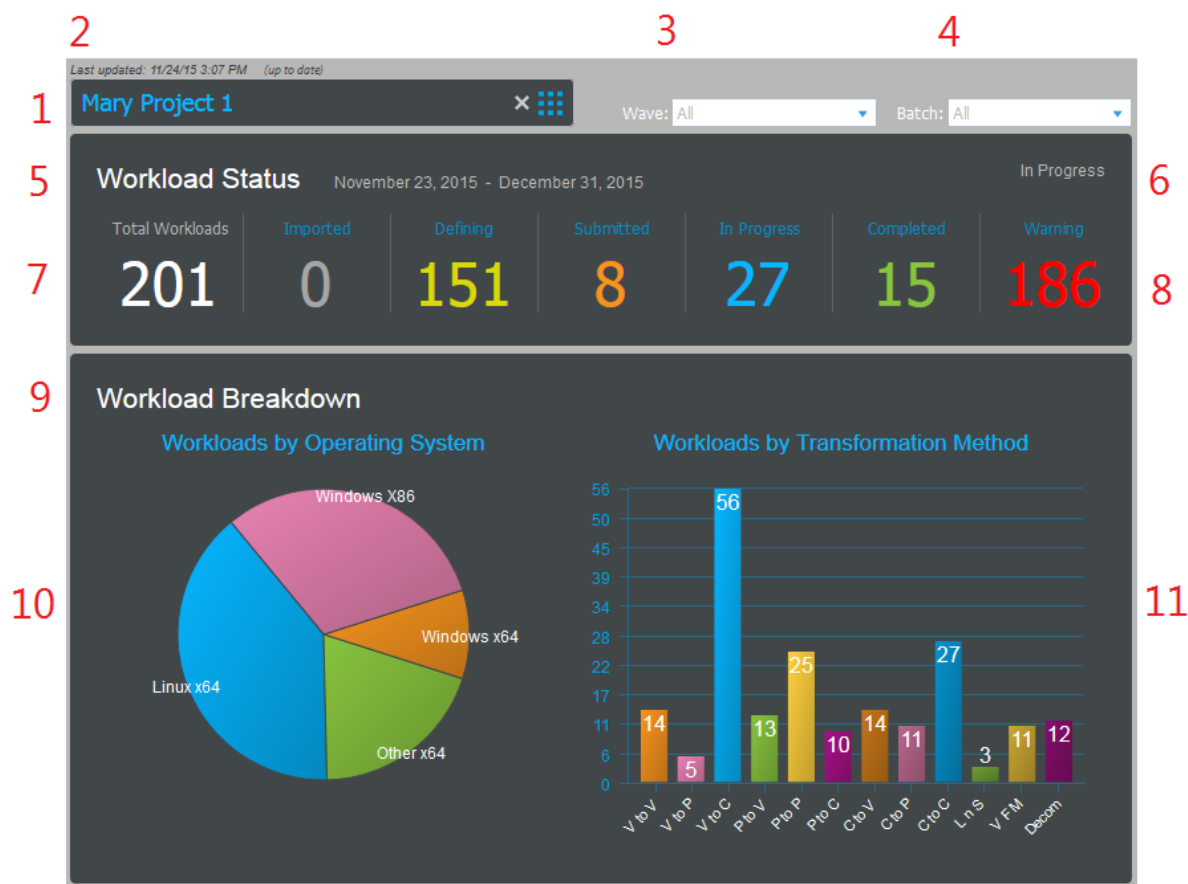
PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides the ability to view summary metrics for your transformation project in the Dashboard.

- ♦ Shows users metrics only for their assigned projects, waves, or batches.
- ♦ Shows the progress of projects, waves, and batches.
- ♦ Shows metrics for workloads by state, operating system, and transformation method.
- ♦ Runs status and count calculation jobs every 5 minutes. Displays **Needs Update** if workload changes occur while the calculation jobs run.

## 14.1.1 About the Dashboard

The PlateSpin Transformation Manager Dashboard displays statistics about your assigned transformation projects, waves, or batches. The

**Figure 14-1** Project View of the Dashboard



**Table 14-1** Dashboard Information

Key	Metric	Description
1	Project	<p>If you have roles on multiple projects, the Project field allows you select which project's information to display.</p> <p>If you have a role on a single project, the Project field and Project Selector settings are static.</p>
2	Last Updated	<p>The PTM Server compiles status and counts for each project every 5 minutes. This time stamp tells you how current are the displayed statistics. If changes occur while you view the dashboard, it also displays the <i>Needs update</i> message.</p> <p>If no changes have occurred, it displays the <i>Up to date</i> message.</p>
3	Waves	<p>If a project has multiple waves, the Waves field allows you to select which wave's information to display. The default is all waves.</p>

Key	Metric	Description
4	Batches	If a project has multiple batches, the Batches field allows you to select which batch's information to display. The default is all batches.
5	Schedule	At the top of the Workload Status pane, PTM displays the start date and cutover date of the project, wave, or batch currently being displayed.
6	Project Status	The current state of the project. For example: In Progress, Closed
7	Transformation Status	<p>The total number of workloads for the project, wave, or batch currently being displayed, and the counts for workloads by category: Total Workloads, Imported, Defining, Submitted, In Progress, Completed, Warning.</p> <p>Click the category title or value to open a Workloads list with the appropriate member items.</p> <p>You can alternatively use the <b>Health &gt; All Warning State</b> option on the Advanced Search dialog to see all workloads in the Warning state.</p>
8	Warning	<p>The count includes any workload transformation that has one or more of the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Transformation is in a failed state.</li> <li>♦ Transformation is not in progress, but the transformation start date has passed.</li> <li>♦ Transformation has not been completed, but the transformation cutover date has passed.</li> <li>♦ Transformation start date is before its parent's start date (batch, wave, project).</li> <li>♦ Transformation cutover date is after its parent's cutover date.</li> </ul>
9	Workload Breakdown	The graphical presentation of workloads based on workload characteristics.
10	Workloads by Operating System	A pie chart showing the percentage of workloads for the project, wave, or batch currently being displayed in each of the operating system categories. This breakout depends on the mix of operating systems allocated in the parent schedule container.

Key	Metric	Description
11	Workloads by Transformation Method	<p>A bar chart showing the count of workloads for the project, wave, or batch currently being displayed in the transformation method categories:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Virtual to virtual (V to V)</li> <li>♦ Virtual to physical (V to P)</li> <li>♦ Virtual to cloud (V to C)</li> <li>♦ Physical to virtual (P to V)</li> <li>♦ Physical to physical (P to P)</li> <li>♦ Physical to cloud (P to C)</li> <li>♦ Cloud to virtual (C to V)</li> <li>♦ Cloud to physical (C to P)</li> <li>♦ Cloud to cloud (C to C)</li> <li>♦ Lift and shift (LnS)</li> <li>♦ Virtual file move (VFM)</li> <li>♦ Decommission (Decom)</li> </ul>

## 14.2 Viewing Counts and Status for a Project, Wave, or Batch

The Projects, Waves, and Batches lists include the following summary health and status counts in the **Counts** column:

### Total

Total number of workloads in the project.

### Def

Total number of workloads currently in the defining state, typically with a status of Needs Additional Info or Ready to be Submitted.

### Submit

Total number of workloads that have been defined and are waiting for transformation to start.

### InProg

Total number of workloads currently in the transforming state.

### Done

Total number of workload transformations currently in the Completed state.

### Warn

Total number of workloads in the project that currently have one or more warning conditions.

The Projects, Waves, Batches, and Workloads lists report the current status in the Status column.



## 14.3 Viewing Workload Status

On the Workloads tab, the Status column shows the transformation workflow state and the migration sub state. You can mouse over the state or sub state message to view details in a tooltip.

## 14.4 What's Happening

The What's Happening panel in the Dashboard displays key events for workloads on the current date, or for a specified date. The information enables users to easily see and do the important tasks for the day. Without performing navigation or complex queries, users quickly know what workloads to work on today, or what workloads to prepare for an upcoming date.

What's Happening identifies common events, such as:

- ♦ The <Project, Wave, Batch, or Workload> start date has arrived.
- ♦ The <Project, Wave, or Batch> is scheduled to be completed today.
- ♦ The workload should be cut over manually today.
- ♦ The workload will be cut over automatically today.
- ♦ The workload will be submitted to a Migration Server today to begin preliminary configuration. Replication begins in {3} days.
- ♦ The completed workload job will be deleted from the Migration Server today.

**Table 14-2** Actions for What's Happening

Options	Action
Date	The current date is selected by default. Click the <b>Calendar</b> icon to open a calendar tool for selecting the date of interest.  Dates are based on the time zone of the PlateSpin Transformation Manager server.
Open	Select an object, then click <b>Open</b> to go to the related page or dialog.
View URL	Pause over the <b>Name</b> of the object to view the page-specific part of the URL in a tooltip.
Filter	Type characters in the <b>Search</b> field to find the object of interest.

## 14.5 Bookmarks

The Bookmarks panel in the Dashboard lists your personal bookmarks. Bookmarks remember the state of the page or dialog visited. You can easily revisit favorite pages or dialogs without performing repetitive and complex queries. You can also share bookmark URLs with colleagues and stakeholders. Transformation Manager honors the role-based permissions for the URL.

Bookmarks are stored in the PlateSpin Transformation Manager database so that they are always available to you. For information about creating and managing your bookmarks, see [Section 4.7, "Bookmarks," on page 51](#).

**Table 14-3** Actions for Bookmarks

Options	Action
View bookmarks	In the list, view the bookmark name, description, and type.
Open	Select a bookmark entry, then click <b>Open</b> to open the page in the current browser tab with the saved filters and selections applied.
Delete	Select one or more bookmarks, then click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected bookmarks from your personal bookmarks. The removal is permanent.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to delete all bookmarks in the list.  Filter the list to include only the bookmarks you want to delete, then click <b>Clear</b> . Refresh the page to display the remaining bookmarks.
View URL	Pause over the <b>Name</b> of the bookmark to view the page-specific part of the URL in a tooltip.
Filter	Type characters in the <b>Search</b> field to find the bookmark of interest. The search checks the bookmark name and description.

## 14.6 Recently Viewed

The Recently Viewed panel in the Dashboard displays links to pages and dialogs that you recently accessed for View or Edit actions. Duplicate instances with the same URL are represented by a single entry. You can quickly return to a location without repeating the navigation or complex search criteria. You can share the URL with colleagues, or add the link to your bookmarks. Transformation Manager honors the role-based permissions for the URL.

**Table 14-4** Actions for Recently Viewed

Options	Action
View links	In the list, view the page or dialog name, description, and type.
Open	Select an entry, then click <b>Open</b> to return to the page with the previous filters applied.
Add to Bookmarks	Select an entry, then click <b>Add to Bookmarks</b> to return to create a personal bookmark for the page
Delete	Select one or more entries, then click <b>Delete</b> to remove the entries from the list.  The removal is temporary. The entry will be displayed again the next time you view that page.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to delete all links in the list, including their undisplayed duplicate entries.  Filter the list to include only the links you want to delete, then click <b>Clear</b> . Refresh the page to display the remaining links.
View URL	Pause over the <b>Name</b> of the entry to view the page-specific part of the URL in a tooltip.
Filter	Type characters in the <b>Search</b> field to find the recently viewed page of interest.

# 15 Managing Projects

PlateSpin Transformation Manager allows you to analyze and organize information about workload transformations into projects based on your business needs.

- ♦ [Section 15.1, “About Projects,” on page 115](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.2, “Prerequisites for Projects,” on page 117](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.3, “Viewing a Project,” on page 117](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.4, “Creating a Project,” on page 117](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.5, “Editing a Project,” on page 118](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.6, “Configuring Custom Field Names for a Project,” on page 118](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.7, “Configuring Project Associations,” on page 119](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.8, “Deleting a Project,” on page 119](#)

## 15.1 About Projects

The Project allows you to track the following information for your transformation project:

**Name:** A friendly name for the project that is unique in your organization. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** The name of the parent organization for the project.

**Description:** (Optional) A brief description of the project.

**Start Date:** The date that the transformation of workloads is planned to begin.

**End Date:** The date that the transformation of all workloads must be completed successfully.

**Mode:** Specify a mode for the project. You can switch between the modes if needed.

- ♦ **Planning:** Planning Mode allows the widest variety of supported transformation methods and planning options.

Use Planning Mode to plan transformations that you execute manually or using third-party migration tools. You can also configure individual workloads for automation.

- ♦ **Automated:** Automated Mode allows you to plan and execute workload migrations in your PlateSpin Migration Factory environment. It provides additional settings that apply only to migration with PlateSpin Migrate servers, while limiting some options to those supported by automation. See [Section 1.3, “PlateSpin Migration Factory Environment,” on page 18](#).

Use Automated Mode to plan transformations that you execute using automated or semi-automated options in a PlateSpin Migration Factory environment. You can also configure individual workloads for manual or third-party migration.

---

**NOTE:** Planning Mode is automatically selected for any workload that has a transformation method that is not supported for automated migration such as Decommission and Virtual File Move.

---

**Custom Field Names:** Additional information types that you want to track for a project. You can define 1 to 7 custom fields. Each custom field is independent, and can be used for any purpose. Uses might include a new attribute, a logical tag, a priority system, contact information, and so on.

For example, if you want to identify the workload with its day-to-day IT administrator, you might define the **Custom 1** field name to be **Contact** for the project. Values might be the contact person's name, user name, or email address, as appropriate for your project. You specify a workload's value for the Contact field in the Workload dialog.

**Associations:** Associations define the relationship between a variety of components and the project. You can also perform the same tasks on each tab that you can on their primary tab, with the exception of the Workloads tab. For workloads, you can view information about the original and proposed workloads associated with the project.

- ♦ **Planning**

- ♦ Waves (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [“Managing Waves” on page 121.](#)
- ♦ Batches (Create, Edit, View, Move, Delete) - See [“Managing Batches” on page 125.](#)
- ♦ Applications (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [“Managing Applications” on page 129.](#)
- ♦ Workloads (Original, Proposed) - See [“Configuring Workload Transformations” on page 145.](#)

- ♦ **Resources**

- ♦ Credentials (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [“Managing Credentials Resources” on page 195.](#)
- ♦ Hosts - See [“Managing Host Resources” on page 201.](#)
  - ♦ Source (View)
  - ♦ Target (Create, Edit, View, Delete)
- ♦ Migration Servers (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [“Managing Migration Server Resources” on page 209.](#)
- ♦ Networks - See [“Managing Network Resources” on page 213.](#)
  - ♦ Source (View)
  - ♦ Target (Create, Edit, View, Delete)
- ♦ Datastores - See [“Managing Datastore Resources” on page 217.](#)
  - ♦ Source (View)
  - ♦ Target (Create, Edit, View, Delete)
- ♦ Resource Pools (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [“Managing Resource Pool Resources” on page 221.](#)
- ♦ Environments (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [“Managing Environment Resources” on page 225.](#)

- ♦ **Users**

Project role assignments at the project level are automatically inherited by their child components.

- ♦ Dashboard Viewer (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Dashboard Viewer Role” on page 88.](#)
- ♦ Migration Specialist (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Migration Specialist Role” on page 87.](#)
- ♦ Project Architect (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Project Architect Role” on page 87.](#)
- ♦ Project Manager (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Project Manager Role” on page 87.](#)

## 15.2 Prerequisites for Projects

When you create a project, you must associate it with a specific organization. Before you can create a project, you must create the parent organization to ensure that it is available when you create the project. See [Section 10.2, “Creating an Organization,” on page 92](#).

## 15.3 Viewing a Project

The View option allows users with the View permissions to view the project information.

**To view project information:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Projects** tab.
- 3 In the **Projects** list, search for and locate the appropriate project.
- 4 Select the project, then click **View**.
- 5 Click **Close** when you are done.

## 15.4 Creating a Project

Only the System Administrator user can create projects.

**To create a project:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Projects** tab.
- 3 Click **Create**.
- 4 In the **Project** pane, specify the following information:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ (Optional) Description
  - ♦ Start Date
  - ♦ End Date
  - ♦ Mode (Planning or Automated)
  - ♦ (Optional) Custom Field Names (Field 1 to Field 7)
- 5 Click **Save** to create the project object and activate the **Associations** pane.
- 6 In the **Associations** pane, click each tab to configure settings for the associated components. See [Section 15.7, “Configuring Project Associations,” on page 119](#).
- 7 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**, or click **Reopen**.
- 8 Click **Save**.
- 9 Click **Close**.

## 15.5 Editing a Project

You might need to modify dates, custom fields, and associations for a project as you configure the project and as the project matures. The System Administrator and Project Manager can modify the project settings.

**To edit a project:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Projects** tab.
- 3 Double-click the project to open the Edit Project dialog, then view the project details.  
You can alternatively select the project, then click **Edit**.
- 4 Modify the values as appropriate:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ (Optional) Description
  - ♦ Start Date
  - ♦ End Date
  - ♦ Mode (Planning or Automated)
  - ♦ (Optional) Custom Field Names (Field 1 to Field 7)
- 5 (Optional) View or modify Associations. See [Section 15.7, “Configuring Project Associations,” on page 119](#).
- 6 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**, or click **Reopen**.
- 7 Click **Save**.
- 8 Click **Close**.

## 15.6 Configuring Custom Field Names for a Project

The custom fields defines additional information that you want to track for a project. The custom fields apply project-wide. The System Administrator and Project Manager can configure 1 to 7 custom fields names for a project. Each field name must be unique in the project. Only defined custom fields are available in the Workload dialog. The Project Architect sets the values appropriate for the workload.

**To define custom field names:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Projects** tab.
- 3 Do one of the following:
  - 3a Click **Create** to open the Create Project dialog, then configure the required fields.
  - 3b Double-click the project to open the Edit Project dialog, then view the project details.
- 4 Under **Custom Field Names**, specify a name for up to seven custom fields.
- 5 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**, or click **Reopen**.
- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Close**.

## 15.7 Configuring Project Associations

The Associations pane for a project shows all of the possible associations. The System Administrator user, Project Manager user, and Project Architect user can configure associations for a project.

Depending on your permissions, you can perform the same actions from the tabs under Associations as you can from the main tabs for these components. Some actions might not be available at this time. You can save the project and return later to complete information.

**To associate components with a project:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Projects** tab.
- 3 Double-click the project to open the Edit Project dialog, then view the project details.
- 4 Under Associations, click each tab to view or modify settings for the associated components:

### Planning

- ♦ Wave - See [Chapter 16, “Managing Waves,” on page 121](#).
- ♦ Batches - See [Chapter 17, “Managing Batches,” on page 125](#).
- ♦ Applications - See [Chapter 18, “Managing Applications,” on page 129](#).
- ♦ Workloads - See [Chapter 21, “Configuring Workload Transformations,” on page 145](#).

### Resources

- ♦ Credentials - See [Section 23, “Managing Credentials Resources,” on page 195](#).
- ♦ Hosts - See [Section 24, “Managing Host Resources,” on page 201](#).
- ♦ Migration Servers - See [Section 25, “Managing Migration Server Resources,” on page 209](#).
- ♦ Networks - See [Section 26, “Managing Network Resources,” on page 213](#).
- ♦ Datastores - See [Section 27, “Managing Datastore Resources,” on page 217](#).
- ♦ Resource Pools - See [Section 28, “Managing Resource Pool Resources,” on page 221](#).
- ♦ Environments - See [Section 29, “Managing Environment Resources,” on page 225](#).

### Users

- ♦ Dashboard Viewer - See [“Dashboard Viewer Role” on page 88](#).
  - ♦ Migration Specialist - See [“Migration Specialist Role” on page 87](#).
  - ♦ Project Architect - See [“Project Architect Role” on page 87](#).
  - ♦ Project Manager - See [“Project Manager Role” on page 87](#).
- 5 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**, or click **Reopen**.
  - 6 Click **Save**.
  - 7 Click **Close**.

## 15.8 Deleting a Project

Only the System Administrator user can delete a project.

---

**NOTE:** Deleting a project deletes all data for the project from the PTM database.

---

**To delete a project:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Projects** tab.
- 3 Select the appropriate project, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.



# 16 Managing Waves

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports rolling wave planning to accommodate the near-term and long-term planning of your transformation tasks. Waves represent a major effort for workload transformation. For near-term waves, you can plan the tasks in detail. You can refine the transformation plan for future waves as newer and better information becomes available.

- ♦ [Section 16.1, “About Waves,” on page 121](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.2, “Prerequisites for Waves,” on page 122](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.3, “Viewing Waves,” on page 122](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.4, “Creating a Wave,” on page 122](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.5, “Editing a Wave,” on page 123](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.6, “Configuring Wave Associations,” on page 123](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.7, “Deleting a Wave,” on page 124](#)

## 16.1 About Waves

The Wave allows you to track the following information for your transformation activities:

**Name:** A friendly name for the wave that is unique in your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** The name of the parent organization for the wave.

**Project:** The name of the parent project for the wave.

**Description:** (Optional) A brief description of the wave.

**Start Date:** The date that the transformation of workloads is planned to begin. By default, the start date is inherited from its parent project's start date. Dates with a gray font indicate inherited values.

**End Date:** The date that the transformation of all workloads must be completed successfully. By default, the end date is inherited from its parent project's end date. Dates with a gray font indicate inherited values.

**Associations:** Associations define the relationship between a variety of component types and the wave.

- ♦ Batches (Create, Edit, View, Delete) - See [“Managing Batches” on page 125](#).
- ♦ Workloads - See [“Configuring Workload Transformations” on page 145](#).
  - ♦ Original (Edit, View, Delete)
  - ♦ Proposed (Edit, View, Delete)
- ♦ Users
  - ♦ Dashboard Viewer (View) - See [“Dashboard Viewer Role” on page 88](#).
  - ♦ Migration Specialist (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Migration Specialist Role” on page 87](#).

- ♦ Project Architect (View) - See [“Project Architect Role” on page 87](#).
- ♦ Project Manager (View) - See [“Project Manager Role” on page 87](#).

## 16.2 Prerequisites for Waves

When you create a wave, you must associate it with a specific organization and project. Before you can create a wave, you must create the parent organization and project to ensure that they are available when you create the wave.

For instructions, see the following:

- ♦ [Section 10.2, “Creating an Organization,” on page 92](#).
- ♦ [Section 15.4, “Creating a Project,” on page 117](#).

## 16.3 Viewing Waves

The View option allows users with only the View permissions to view the wave information.

**To view wave information:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Waves** tab.
- 3 In the **Waves** list, search for and locate the appropriate wave.
- 4 Select the wave, then click **View**.
- 5 Click **Close** when you are done.

## 16.4 Creating a Wave

A System Administrator user and a Project Manager can create waves.

**To create a wave:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Waves** tab.
- 3 Click **Create**.
- 4 In the **Waves** pane, specify the following information:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ (Optional) Description
  - ♦ Start Date
  - ♦ End Date
- 5 Click **Save** to create the wave object and activate the **Associations** pane.
- 6 (Optional) In the **Associations** pane, click each tab to configure settings for the associated components. See [Section 16.6, “Configuring Wave Associations,” on page 123](#).
- 7 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**.

- 8 Click **Save**.
- 9 Click **Close**.

## 16.5 Editing a Wave

You might need to modify dates and associations for a wave as you configure the wave and as its parent project matures. The System Administrator and Project Manager can modify the wave.

### To edit a wave:

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Waves** tab.
- 3 Double-click the wave to open the Edit Wave dialog, then view the wave details.  
You can alternatively select the wave, then click **Edit**.
- 4 Modify the values as appropriate.
- 5 (Optional) View or modify the Associations. See [Section 16.6, “Configuring Wave Associations,” on page 123](#).
- 6 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**.
- 7 Click **Save**.
- 8 Click **Close**.

## 16.6 Configuring Wave Associations

The Associations pane for a wave shows all of the associations. The System Administrator user, Project Manager user, and Project Architect user can configure associations for a wave.

Depending on the status of workloads, some actions might not be available at this time. You can save the wave and return later to complete information.

### To associate components with a wave:

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Waves** tab.
- 3 Double-click the wave to open the Edit Wave dialog, then view the wave details.
- 4 Under Associations, click each tab to view or modify settings for the associated components:
  - ♦ Batches - See [Chapter 17, “Managing Batches,” on page 125](#).
  - ♦ Workloads - See [Chapter 21, “Configuring Workload Transformations,” on page 145](#).
  - ♦ Users
    - ♦ Dashboard Viewer - See [“Dashboard Viewer Role” on page 88](#).
    - ♦ Migration Specialist - See [“Migration Specialist Role” on page 87](#).
    - ♦ Project Architect - See [“Project Architect Role” on page 87](#).
    - ♦ Project Manager - See [“Project Manager Role” on page 87](#).
- 5 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**.
- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Close**.

## 16.7 Deleting a Wave

Only the System Administrator user and Project Manager can delete a wave. Deleting a wave deletes all data for the wave from the PTM database. It moves the member workloads to an Imported state, but it does not delete the associated workload information.

**To delete a wave:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Waves** tab.
- 3 Select the appropriate wave, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

# 17 Managing Batches

Batches are the component efforts for waves in the workload transformation. A batch groups like workloads that you want to transform together. Batches can be more easily scheduled during intervals when network resources are available. You can coordinate the start dates and cutover dates with stakeholders to work around planned events that are critical to the business.

- ♦ [Section 17.1, “About Batches,” on page 125](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.2, “Prerequisites for Batches,” on page 126](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.3, “Viewing a Batch,” on page 126](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.4, “Creating a Batch,” on page 126](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.5, “Editing a Batch,” on page 127](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.6, “Moving a Batch to a Different Wave,” on page 127](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.7, “Configuring Batch Associations,” on page 128](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.8, “Deleting a Batch,” on page 128](#)

## 17.1 About Batches

The Batch allows you to track the following information for your transformation activities:

**Name:** A friendly name for the batch that is unique in your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** The name of the parent organization for the batch.

**Project:** The name of the parent project for the batch.

**Wave:** The name of the parent wave for the batch.

**Description:** (Optional) A brief description of the batch.

**Start Date:** The date that the transformation of its member workloads is planned to begin. By default, the start date is inherited from its parent wave’s start date. Dates with a gray font indicate inherited values.

**End Date:** The date that the transformation of all of its member workloads must be completed successfully. By default, the end date is inherited from its parent wave’s end date. Dates with a gray font indicate inherited values.

**Associations:** Associations define the relationship between a variety of component types and the batch.

- ♦ Workloads - See [“Configuring Workload Transformations” on page 145](#).
  - ♦ Original (Edit, View, Delete)
  - ♦ Proposed (Edit, View, Delete)
- ♦ Users
  - ♦ Dashboard Viewer (View) - See [“Dashboard Viewer Role” on page 88](#).

- ♦ Migration Specialist (View, Add, Remove) - See [“Migration Specialist Role” on page 87](#).
- ♦ Project Architect (View) - See [“Project Architect Role” on page 87](#).
- ♦ Project Manager (View) - See [“Project Manager Role” on page 87](#).

## 17.2 Prerequisites for Batches

When you create a batch, you must associate it with a specific organization, project, and wave. Before you can create a batch, you must create the parent organization, project, and wave to ensure that they are available when you create the batch.

For instructions, see the following:

- ♦ [Section 10.2, “Creating an Organization,” on page 92](#).
- ♦ [Section 15.4, “Creating a Project,” on page 117](#).
- ♦ [Section 16.4, “Creating a Wave,” on page 122](#).

## 17.3 Viewing a Batch

The View option allows users with only the View permissions to view the batch information.

**To view batch information:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Batches** tab.
- 3 In the **Batches** list, search for and locate the appropriate batch.
- 4 Select the batch, then click **View**.
- 5 Click **Close** when you are done.

## 17.4 Creating a Batch

A System Administrator user and a Project Manager can create batches.

**To create a batch:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Batches** tab.
- 3 Click **Create**.
- 4 In the **Batches** pane, specify the following information:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Wave
  - ♦ (Optional) Description
  - ♦ Start Date
  - ♦ End Date
- 5 Click **Save** to create the batch object and activate the **Associations** pane.

- 6 (Optional) In the **Associations** pane, click each tab to configure settings for the associated components. See [Section 17.7, “Configuring Batch Associations,” on page 128](#)
- 7 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**.
- 8 Click **Save**.
- 9 Click **Close**.

## 17.5 Editing a Batch

You might need to modify dates and associations for a batch as you configure the batch and as its parent project matures. The System Administrator and Project Manager can modify the batch.

### To edit a batch:

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Batches** tab.
- 3 Double-click the batch to open the Edit Batch dialog, then view the batch details.  
You can alternatively select the batch, then click **Edit**.
- 4 Modify the values as appropriate.
- 5 (Optional) View or modify Associations. See [Section 17.7, “Configuring Batch Associations,” on page 128](#)
- 6 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**.
- 7 Click **Save**.
- 8 Click **Close**.

## 17.6 Moving a Batch to a Different Wave

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Batches** tab.
- 2 Select one or more batches from the list that you want to move to a different wave. The batches can be in the same or different wave. Press Shift and click the appropriate batches to select multiple batches.
- 3 Click **Move**.
- 4 In the Move dialog, select the appropriate destination wave, then click **OK**.
- 5 If there are date conflicts between the dates set for the batches and their new parent wave, specify your preference for how you want to handle the dates.  
  
For example, you might choose to allow the batch dates to change to fit into the window scheduled for the new parent wave, or keep the existing dates and fix them later. Conflicted dates display in a red font.  
  
If the batches' dates are inherited, the batches automatically inherit the dates from the new parent wave.
- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Close**.
- 8 For each batch that has dates in conflict, select the batch, click **Edit**, modify the dates, then click **Save**.

## 17.7 Configuring Batch Associations

The Associations pane for a batch shows all of the associations. The System Administrator user, Project Manager user, and Project Architect user can configure associations for a batch.

Depending on the status of workloads, some actions might not be available at this time. You can save the batch and return later to complete information.

### To associate components with a batch:

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Batches** tab.
- 3 Double-click the batch to open the Edit Batch dialog, then view the batch details.
- 4 Under Associations, click each tab to view or modify settings for the associated components:
  - ♦ Workloads - See [Chapter 21, “Configuring Workload Transformations,” on page 145](#).
  - ♦ Users
    - ♦ Dashboard Viewer - See [“Dashboard Viewer Role” on page 88](#).
    - ♦ Migration Specialist - See [“Migration Specialist Role” on page 87](#).
    - ♦ Project Architect - See [“Project Architect Role” on page 87](#).
    - ♦ Project Manager - See [“Project Manager Role” on page 87](#).
- 5 (Optional) Click **Set to Completed**.
- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Close**.

## 17.8 Deleting a Batch

Only the System Administrator user and Project Manager can delete a batch. Deleting a batch deletes all schedule data for the batch from the PTM database. It moves the member workloads to an Imported state, but it does not delete the associated workload information.

### To delete a batch:

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Batches** tab.
- 3 Select the appropriate batch, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.



# 18 Managing Applications

PlateSpin Transformation Manager allows you to define the application types to track for workload transformations.

- ♦ [Section 18.1, “About Applications,” on page 129](#)
- ♦ [Section 18.2, “Prerequisites for Applications,” on page 129](#)
- ♦ [Section 18.3, “Viewing Applications,” on page 129](#)
- ♦ [Section 18.4, “Creating Applications,” on page 130](#)
- ♦ [Section 18.5, “Creating Applications during Spreadsheet Import,” on page 130](#)
- ♦ [Section 18.6, “Editing Applications,” on page 130](#)
- ♦ [Section 18.7, “Associating Applications and Workloads,” on page 130](#)
- ♦ [Section 18.8, “Deleting an Application,” on page 131](#)

## 18.1 About Applications

The Application allows you to track the following information for your transformation activities:

**Name:** A friendly name for the application that is unique in your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** The name of the parent organization for the project.

**Project:** The name of the parent project for the application component.

**Description:** (Optional) A brief description of the application.

## 18.2 Prerequisites for Applications

When you create an application component, you must associate it with a specific organization and project. Before you can create an application, you must create the parent organization and project to ensure that they are available when you create the application.

## 18.3 Viewing Applications

The View option allows users with only the View permissions to view the application information.

**To view application information:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Applications** tab.
- 3 In the **Applications** list, search for and locate the appropriate application.
- 4 Select the application, then click **View**.
- 5 Click **Close** when you are done.

## 18.4 Creating Applications

A System Administrator user and a Project Manager can create application components.

**To create an application:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Applications** tab.
- 3 Click **Create**.
- 4 Specify the following information:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ (Optional) Description
- 5 Click **Save** to create the batch object and activate the **Associations** pane.
- 6 Click **Close**.

## 18.5 Creating Applications during Spreadsheet Import

You can also create Application objects during the Spreadsheet Import. For each workload, add one or more **Application** columns. If an application does not match an existing Application object for the project, the import creates it. The specified applications are automatically associated with the workload. See [Table B-8, “Application Parameter,” on page 187](#).

## 18.6 Editing Applications

The System Administrator and Project Manager can modify the application.

**To edit an application:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Applications** tab.
- 3 Double-click the application to open the Edit Application dialog, then view the application details.  
You can alternatively select the application, then click **Edit**.
- 4 Modify the values as appropriate.
- 5 Click **Save**.
- 6 Click **Close**.

## 18.7 Associating Applications and Workloads

The Applications panel in the Workload dialog shows all of the applications associated with the workload. The System Administrator user, Project Manager user, and Project Architect can associate an application with a workload.

**To associate an application with a workload:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.

- 2 Select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 Double-click the workload to open the Edit Workload dialog, then scroll down to the Applications panel to view the applications associated with the workload.
- 4 Click **Add** to add an application association.
- 5 Click **Remove** to remove an application association.
- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Close**.

In Spreadsheet Import, the applications you specify for the workload are automatically associated with the workload. See also [Table B-8, “Application Parameter,” on page 187](#).

## 18.8 Deleting an Application

Only the System Administrator user and Project Manager can delete an application.

---

**NOTE:** If you delete an application, it automatically removes the associations for it, including those assigned to workloads that are in progress and completed. If the same associations apply, consider whether it is more appropriate to edit the application name and settings.

---

### To delete an application:

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Applications** tab.
- 3 Select the appropriate application, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.



# V Workloads

PlateSpin Transformation Manager allows you to import information about the cloud, physical, virtual, machines for each transformation project. You can use each workload's original configuration to define its appropriate destination workload and target network.

- ♦ [Chapter 19, “Overview of Workloads,” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 20, “Importing and Discovering Workloads,” on page 137](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 21, “Configuring Workload Transformations,” on page 145](#)
- ♦ [Appendix B, “Bulk Import Spreadsheet,” on page 175](#)



# 19 Overview of Workloads

Workloads are the cloud, physical, or virtual machines that you want to transform from their current mode of operation to a future mode of operation. You can use a single import or bulk import method to add information about a project's original workloads to the transformation database. You can modify the original workload information by re-importing the machine information.

---

**NOTE:** If you use PlateSpin Migrate Connector and PlateSpin Migrate servers for a project, a successful import triggers an automated discovery process that adds more information about each of the imported source workloads.

---

On import of an original workload, PlateSpin Transformation Manager automatically creates a matching proposed workload based on the original configuration. You can use individual edit and bulk edit to customize the proposed workload.

- ♦ [Section 19.1, “Automated Mode,” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2, “Workload Types,” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.3, “Workload Transformation Methods,” on page 136](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.4, “OS Types,” on page 136](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.5, “Custom Fields,” on page 136](#)

## 19.1 Automated Mode

Automated Mode allows you to plan workload migrations and to automate execution of supported migrations on PlateSpin Migrate servers in your PlateSpin Migration Factory environment. You can begin planning without setting up the entire migration environment. PlateSpin Migrate servers must be deployed in the network before you begin automated migration tasks. See the [PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 Installation and Upgrade Guide](#) for installation requirements and instructions.

If you switch from Planning Mode to Automated Mode for a project, the proposed workload settings for Storage and NICs revert to the settings for the original workload. Otherwise, all previously imported workloads settings are unchanged. For subsequently imported workloads, the Migration Server is automatically set to [Automated Migration](#).

## 19.2 Workload Types

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports the following workload types:

- ♦ **Cloud:** The workload is hosted in a cloud provider's infrastructure-as-a-service environment, such as Amazon Web Services, Google Cloud Platform, Microsoft Azure, Rackspace, or VMware vCloud.
- ♦ **Physical:** The workload is hosted on a physical machine, such as a tower, rack, or blade server.
- ♦ **Virtual:** The workload is a virtual machine hosted on a virtualization host server running a hypervisor, such as Citrix XenServer, Linux KVM, Microsoft Hyper-V, SUSE Xen, or VMware.

## 19.3 Workload Transformation Methods

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports planning for the following workload transformation methods:

- ♦ Cloud to cloud (C to C)
- ♦ Cloud to physical (C to P)
- ♦ Cloud to virtual (C to V)
- ♦ Physical to cloud (P to C)
- ♦ Physical to physical (P to P)
- ♦ Physical to virtual (P to V)
- ♦ Virtual to cloud (V to C)
- ♦ Virtual to physical (V to P)
- ♦ Virtual to virtual (V to V)
- ♦ Lift and shift (LnS)
- ♦ Virtual file move (VFM)
- ♦ Decommission (Decom)

For Decommission, the Workload dialog displays the Original configuration, project, wave, batch, and schedule. PTM does not display the Proposed workload configuration, but it stores the values in the PTM database. It includes proposed values in Advanced Search, Bulk Edit, and Bulk Status Change actions and tracks indirect edits. Thus, you can move a workload in and out of a decommission state.

Automated Mode supports automated execution for two transformation methods where the virtualization hypervisor is VMware and the virtual machines are on VMware Cluster hosts:

- ♦ Physical to virtual
- ♦ Virtual to virtual

All other transformation methods are automatically set up in Planning Mode because they are not supported for automated migration.

## 19.4 OS Types

The System Administrator manages a list of available Operating System Types for the product in the System Configuration settings.

Contact your Transformation Manager administrator if you need additional OS Types for your transformation projects. See [Section 8, “Configuring Operating Systems,” on page 77](#).

## 19.5 Custom Fields

You can define custom fields for each project. The Workloads list can include custom field names as column headers if a project is selected in the Global Project Selector. PTM also adds the custom fields that you defined for the project to the Advanced Search form and the Bulk Edit form. See [Section 15.6, “Configuring Custom Field Names for a Project,” on page 118](#).



# 20 Importing and Discovering Workloads

Large-scale transformation projects typically involve hundreds, or even thousands, of workloads. It is time-consuming to define each workload individually in your Transformation Manager system. PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides tools to help simplify that process. You can import workload details from a spreadsheet, or leverage automated discovery to gather details for one or multiple workloads at a time. Import with automated discovery simplifies and standardizes the setup of workloads for planning.

- ♦ [Section 20.1, “About Source Workload Details,” on page 137](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.2, “About Workload Discovery,” on page 137](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.3, “Viewing Workloads,” on page 139](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.4, “Importing Workloads with a Spreadsheet,” on page 139](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.5, “Importing Workloads with Auto-Discovery,” on page 140](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.6, “Retrying Workload Discovery,” on page 143](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.7, “Rediscovering Workloads,” on page 143](#)

## 20.1 About Source Workload Details

To effectively plan a workload migration, you need to gather information about the source workload, such as:

- ♦ FQDN
- ♦ IP address
- ♦ Host name
- ♦ Amount of RAM
- ♦ Number of CPUs or cores

## 20.2 About Workload Discovery

If a PlateSpin Migrate Connector is available to your project, PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides automated discovery of source workloads as you import them into the project. You can also rediscover details for a workload if necessary.

- ♦ [“Discovery Requirements for Source Workloads” on page 137](#)
- ♦ [“Import and Discovery Process” on page 138](#)
- ♦ [“Troubleshooting Discovery Failures” on page 139](#)

### 20.2.1 Discovery Requirements for Source Workloads

Before you attempt an import with auto-discovery, you must configure your PlateSpin Discovery Environment:

- ♦ **PlateSpin Transformation Manager 1.1 SP1**

Configure PlateSpin Transformation Manager and set up a project for the workloads you want to discover.

- ♦ **PlateSpin Migrate Connector 1.1**

Deploy a Migrate Connector in the same network as the source workloads and assign it to the PTM Server or to your project on the server. For deployment information, see “[Deployment Requirements](#)” in the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.

PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance includes a Migrate Connector instance that is pre-configured to work with the PTM Server. If you have multiple projects, you can deploy a Migrate Connector instance for each project separately on your own SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP4 servers. See the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.

---

**NOTE:** Ensure that the Migrate Connector is up and running before you attempt discovery or rediscovery of workloads.

---

- ♦ **Source Workloads**

- ♦ The Connector supports automated discovery of Windows and Linux source workloads for the following platforms:

- ♦ Physical machines with x86 and x64 architectures
- ♦ Virtual machines (VMs) with x86 and x64 architectures on VMware Cluster hosts

For cloud or other virtual workload types, you can use the Spreadsheet Import method to add workload details.

- ♦ Ensure that the source workloads are up and running.
- ♦ Ensure that the network connection is working between the PlateSpin Migrate Connector and the source workloads.

- ♦ **Credentials**

Create a Credentials resource to use for source workload discovery. The Credentials resource is also used later for replication to the target VM on the host.

- ♦ **Network Connectivity and Access**

For information about network connectivity and access information for automated discovery, see “[Workload Discovery](#)” on page 36.

## 20.2.2 Import and Discovery Process

The import and auto-discovery process performs the following actions:

1. The import creates a new Workload object unless it matches an existing workload.
2. The Workloads list displays the new workloads at the next page refresh, using the IP address as the workload name if the FQDN is not provided.
3. Auto-discovery begins for each new workload, using the provided Credentials resources to log in to the workload. Discovery status displays in the Workloads list and Workload dialog.
4. On successful workload discovery, the Workloads list or Workload dialog displays the newly discovered details at the next page refresh. The discovered host name replaces the IP address or FQDN as the workload name, as appropriate.

## 20.2.3 Troubleshooting Discovery Failures

Discovery fails for any of the following conditions:


- ♦ A Migrate Connector is not available.
- ♦ The source workload is not supported for automated discovery.
- ♦ The necessary ports are not open in the source workload's operating system firewall.
- ♦ The source workload Credentials resources are not provided.
- ♦ The Credentials resource has an invalid value for the user name and password.
- ♦ The source workload is not running at the time of discovery.
- ♦ The provided IP address or FQDN is used by a non-computer device such as a UPS, printer, or network equipment. The workload is automatically removed from the database.

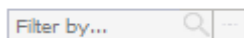
After you resolve Migrate Connector, network, or credentials issues, you can retry discovery for supported source workloads. See [Section 20.6, “Retrying Workload Discovery,” on page 143](#).

If you retry discovery for a workload that has failed discovery and the workload goes into a transformation workflow phase of **Imported** with a sub status of **Workload Not Configured**, it might be an indication that there is no valid Credential resource assigned to the workload. In order for the initial discovery to proceed, go to the Workload dialog and assign a Credential resource in the Workload panel. See [Section 23.4.1, “Associating Credentials and Workloads,” on page 197](#).

## 20.3 Viewing Workloads

You manage workloads through their transformation lifecycle from the Workloads tab. You import information about the source workloads, then track key settings and status for them from this page.

- 1 Select your project in the **Project Selector**.  
If you have rights in only in a single project, the project is selected automatically.
- 2 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar.
- 3 Select the **Workloads** tab.
- 4 Use the Filter to perform a simple search on the list. Use the Advanced Search  to search on a variety of workload settings, custom fields, status, and health. See [Section 21.4, “Locating Workloads with the Filter and Advanced Search,” on page 160](#).



- 5 View the **Status** to follow the workload state.

## 20.4 Importing Workloads with a Spreadsheet

Large-scale transformation projects typically involve hundreds, or even thousands, of workloads. It is time-consuming to define each workload individually in your Transformation Manager system. You can use the Spreadsheet Import dialog on the Workloads tab to import information about the workloads for a single project from a specially formatted spreadsheet. For detailed information about preparing and validating the spreadsheet, see [Appendix B, “Bulk Import Spreadsheet,” on page 175](#).

---

**NOTE:** If a PlateSpin Migrate Connector is available to the project, the successful import of workloads initiates an automated discovery process that retrieves details about the source workloads.

---

---

**Users Who Can Perform This Task:** System Administrator, Project Manager, Project Architect

---

**To use a spreadsheet to import multiple workloads for a project:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Click **Spreadsheet Import**.
- 3 From the **Project** list, select the project to use for the workloads in the spreadsheet.  
If the global scope of operations is set to a project, the **Project** field is pre-populated with that value. To select a different project, exit the Spreadsheet Import dialog, deselect the global scope or reassign the scope to the appropriate project, and then return to [Step 2](#) and try again.
- 4 Click **Browse**, then locate and select the Bulk Import spreadsheet (.xls file) that contains the workload information that you want to add to the specified project.
- 5 Click **Validate**, then view the **Validation Results** to verify that all required information is present and in the appropriate format.  
For example, it reports if an entry is missing required information, uses an unknown option in a field, or uses wrong the format for values.
- 6 If the spreadsheet contains errors:
  - 6a Click **Get Results** at the bottom of the dialog to generate an annotated spreadsheet, and save the file to your computer.
  - 6b Correct the errors in your Bulk Import spreadsheet, and save the file.
  - 6c Return to [Step 5](#), and repeat the validation and correction process until there are no reported errors.
- 7 After the spreadsheet is validated, click **Import**.
- 8 After a successful import, click **Get Results** at the bottom of the dialog, then click **Save**.  
PlateSpin Transformation Manager adds the assigned workload IDs to the spreadsheet, as well as the final status of **Imported**. If you provided NIC and Disk information, it also adds the UUIDs assigned for those components.
- 9 In the Web Interface, select to **Planning > Workloads** to view the list of workloads.
- 10 (Connector) If the spreadsheet included credential information for one or more workloads, view **Status** to confirm the automated discovery for the workloads.

## 20.5 Importing Workloads with Auto-Discovery

If a PlateSpin Migrate Connector is available to the project, you can use the **Import** option to import workloads and leverage an auto-discovery process to add details about them:

- ♦ Specify an IPv4 address or FQDN to import and discover details for a single workload.
- ♦ Specify a range of IPv4 addresses to import and discover details for up to 256 workloads at a time.

A workload can have only one instance in a transformation project. If a workload already exists in the project, the discovery process is not performed for it. The auto-discovery also ignores non-computer networked devices.

- ♦ [“About Import” on page 141](#)
- ♦ [“Importing a Single Workload by IP Address or FQDN” on page 141](#)
- ♦ [“Importing Workloads in an IP Address Range” on page 142](#)

## 20.5.1 About Import

The Import dialog for single or range import requires the following information:

**Organization:** Select the parent organization for the project.

**Project:** Select the parent project for the workload.

**Description:** (Optional) Specify a brief description of the workload or range of workloads. This text appears by default in the Workloads list. For a Range Import, the description is associated with each workload discovered in that range.

**IP or FQDN:** Specify a single address or a range of addresses:

- ♦ **Single:** Specify the IP address or fully qualified domain name for the workload. PTM uses this information to discover and communicate with the workload. A workload can have only one instance in a transformation project.

Examples:

```
sqlserver5.paris.digitalair.com  
192.168.1.1
```

- ♦ **Range:** Specify the first IPv4 address in the workload range, then specify the fourth octet value for the last IPv4 address in the range. Valid values for the range octet are 0 to 255. PTM uses this information to discover and communicate with the workloads.

Examples:

```
10.10.1.0 - 255  
10.10.10.16 - 48
```

In Planning Mode, the range import process also scans the PlateSpin Migrate servers associated with the project. It sets the Migration Server resource for a workload if a match is found, disables the Planning Mode option, and sets the workflow state as Submitted.

**Credential:** PTM uses the credentials to discover and communicate with the workload. You can specify 1 to 4 Credentials resources to try. The import tries each specified Credentials resource. At least one of the specified Credentials resources must be valid in order for discovery to succeed.

## 20.5.2 Importing a Single Workload by IP Address or FQDN

You can specify a single IPv4 address or FQDN to import and discover details for a single workload.

**To import a single workload:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Select **Import**.

3 In the Import a Workload dialog, specify the following information:

- ♦ Organization
- ♦ Project
- ♦ Description
- ♦ IP or FQDN

Examples:

```
sqlserver5.paris.digitalair.com  
192.168.1.1
```

- ♦ Credentials

Specify 1 to 4 Credentials resources to try.

4 Click **Import**.

5 Click **Close** to return to the Workloads list.

6 In the Workloads list, monitor the discovery status for the workload.

7 (Discovery Failed) If discovery fails, mouse over the workload status to understand the problem, then resolve the issues and retry discovery.

## 20.5.3 Importing Workloads in an IP Address Range

You can specify a range of IPv4 addresses to import and discover details for up to 256 workloads at a time.

**To import workloads in a specified IP address range:**

1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.

2 Select **Import**.

3 In the Import a Range of Workloads dialog, specify the following information:

- ♦ Organization
- ♦ Project
- ♦ Description
- ♦ IP or FQDN

Specify the first IP address in the range and last octet in the range.

Examples:

```
10.10.1.0 - 255  
10.10.10.16 - 48
```

- ♦ Credentials

Specify 1 to 4 Credentials resources to try against each workload in the range.

4 Click **Import**.

5 Click **Close** to return to the Workloads list.

6 In the Workloads list, monitor the discovery process for each workload in the range.

7 (Discovery Failed) If discovery fails, mouse over the workload status to understand the problem, then resolve the issues and retry discovery for the failed workload.

## 20.6 Retrying Workload Discovery

You might want to retry discovery for a workload if the initial discovery fails. For information about possible causes of discovery failure, see [“Troubleshooting Discovery Failures” on page 139](#).

---

**NOTE:** Retry is not available for manual migration.

---

### To retry discovery for one or more workloads:

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the Advanced Search to select one or more workloads where the initial discovery failed. In the **Sub Status** list, select **Initial workload discovery failed**.
- 3 Click in the Workloads list to exit the Advanced Search.
- 4 For each workload, mouse over the **Initial workload discovery failed** status to view details about the reason the discovery failed.
- 5 Select one or multiple workloads in the refined list.
- 6 In the actions above the list, click **Retry** to initiate discovery for each of the selected workloads.

### To retry discovery for a single workload:

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the Filter and Advanced Search to locate and select the workload, then click **Edit**.
- 3 Mouse over **Retry** in the header area for information about why the initial discovery failed.
- 4 Click **Retry** to initiate discovery.

## 20.7 Rediscovering Workloads

You might want to rediscover a workload if you modify the source workload before you submit the transformation for execution. After you edit a proposed workload by using the Workload dialog or the Bulk Edit options, any rediscovered workload information applies only to the original workload.

### To rediscover one or more workloads:

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the Advanced Search to select one or more workloads where the initial discovery failed. In the **Sub Status** list, select **Discovery succeeded, ready to plan**.
- 3 Click in the Workloads list to exit the Advanced Search.
- 4 Select one or multiple workloads in the refined list.
- 5 In the actions above the list, click **Rediscover** to initiate rediscovery for each of the selected workloads.

### To rediscover a single workload:

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the Filter and Advanced Search to locate and select the workload, then click **Edit**.
- 3 In the header area, note the Sub Status **Discovery succeeded, ready to plan**.
- 4 Click **Rediscover** to initiate rediscovery.





# 21 Configuring Workload Transformations

After you import workloads and discover information about them, you are ready to configure the proposed transformation for each workload.

- ♦ [Section 21.1, “About the Workload Dialog,” on page 145](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.2, “Viewing the Workloads List,” on page 158](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.3, “Viewing a Workload NIC and Volume Summary,” on page 159](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.4, “Locating Workloads with the Filter and Advanced Search,” on page 160](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.5, “Viewing Workload Details for Automated Transformations,” on page 161](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.6, “Tracking Workload Status for External Migrations,” on page 161](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.7, “Editing the Workload Transformation,” on page 164](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.8, “Configuring the Source NIC to Use for Replication,” on page 165](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.9, “Editing a Workload Transformation after Submit,” on page 165](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.10, “Bulk Edit for Multiple Proposed Workloads,” on page 166](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.11, “Bulk Status Change for Multiple Proposed Workloads,” on page 171](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.12, “Synchronizing Edits from the Migrate Server,” on page 171](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.13, “Viewing the Transformation History,” on page 172](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.14, “Adding User Notes to the Transformation History,” on page 172](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.15, “Withdrawing a Submitted Workload,” on page 173](#)
- ♦ [Section 21.16, “Deleting a Workload,” on page 174](#)

## 21.1 About the Workload Dialog

You plan each transformation through the Workload dialog. It contains information about the original workload, the proposed workload, and the transformation status. This dialog allows you to modify the proposed workload and the transformation state for the workload.

In the Workload dialog, the font colors for Proposed values indicate states for the data:

- ♦ **Light Gray:** The Proposed field values are light gray (dimmed) if the section has not yet been edited directly. Each Proposed field value is inherited from its source workload’s imported or discovered value. In the Transformation Plan section, each field value is inherited from its parent batch, wave, or project value.
- ♦ **Gray:** The Proposed field values are gray if the section has been edited directly and the value matches the displayed Original value. The Proposed values can be modified if the Edit action is enabled for the section.
- ♦ **Blue italics:** The field value has been modified from its imported or discovered value.

If the section in the Workload dialog has not been edited directly, any changes to the Proposed default or imported values have been made indirectly. Otherwise, the changes might have been made directly or indirectly. The source and history of changes to field values are not tracked.

- ♦ **Red:** The section heading is in a red boldface font if errors or warnings exist for any of its fields. The red error condition displays next to the field label. For example, an error exists if a required value is missing.

The dialog allows you to view or modify the following information for the workload transformation:

- ♦ [Header](#)
- ♦ [Workload IDs and Discovery Address](#)
- ♦ [URL for the Workload dialog](#)
- ♦ [Errors and Warnings](#)
- ♦ [Status and Retry](#)
- ♦ [Migration Sub Status](#)
- ♦ [Discovery Status and Rediscovery](#)
- ♦ [Last Modified](#)
- ♦ [License State](#)
- ♦ [Transformation Plan](#)
- ♦ [Migration Settings](#)
- ♦ [Workload](#)
- ♦ [Location](#)
- ♦ [Network Interfaces](#)
- ♦ [Testing Network Interfaces](#)
- ♦ [Storage](#)
- ♦ [Applications](#)
- ♦ [Custom Fields](#)
- ♦ [Transformation History](#)

### 21.1.1 Header

The Workload dialog header provides the following information about the workload:

- ♦ FQDN (fully qualified domain name)
- ♦ Project name
- ♦ Wave name or <wave not assigned>
- ♦ Batch name or <batch not assigned>

### 21.1.2 Workload IDs and Discovery Address

Mouse over any of the objects in the Workload dialog header area to view the following IDs for the selected workload:


- ♦ Transformation ID
- ♦ Original Workload ID
- ♦ Proposed Workload ID
- ♦ Migration Server Workload ID

This value is known after a PlateSpin Migrate server has been assigned. It is used for matching workloads in the database of the specified PlateSpin Migrate server.

- ♦ Discovery Address

This is the IP address used for discovery and communications with the workload.

### 21.1.3 URL for the Workload dialog

Click the Navigation URL icon  in the upper right corner of the Workload dialog to show the URL to the selected workload transformation. You can open the link in a new tab, or copy the URL to the clipboard. You can also email the copied URL to stakeholders to allow them to go directly to the selected page. Log in is required for those users to gain access.

### 21.1.4 Errors and Warnings

If errors or warnings exist, the Workload dialog reports the total number that are associated with the workload transformation. For sections that contain errors or warnings, the section title and the field values of missing or invalid information appear in a red font.



Errors exist



Warnings exist

---

**NOTE:** A **Retry** option is available for failed states that are recoverable conditions.

---

### 21.1.5 Status and Retry

The Status indicates in which state the workload is in its transformation workflow. [Figure 21-1](#) shows the user responsible for setting the status, the various workload states, and the workflow for the transformation process. The thick lines show the default next state available for each state. See [Table 21-1](#) for a description of each workload state and its possible next states.

The Transformation Workflow diagram represents the overall logical flow of states in a workload transformation. Some states are not available, depending on whether the workload transformation is set to Automated Mode or Planning Mode. For example, after an automated cutover is completed successfully, the migration job is complete and you cannot reopen the same migration job.

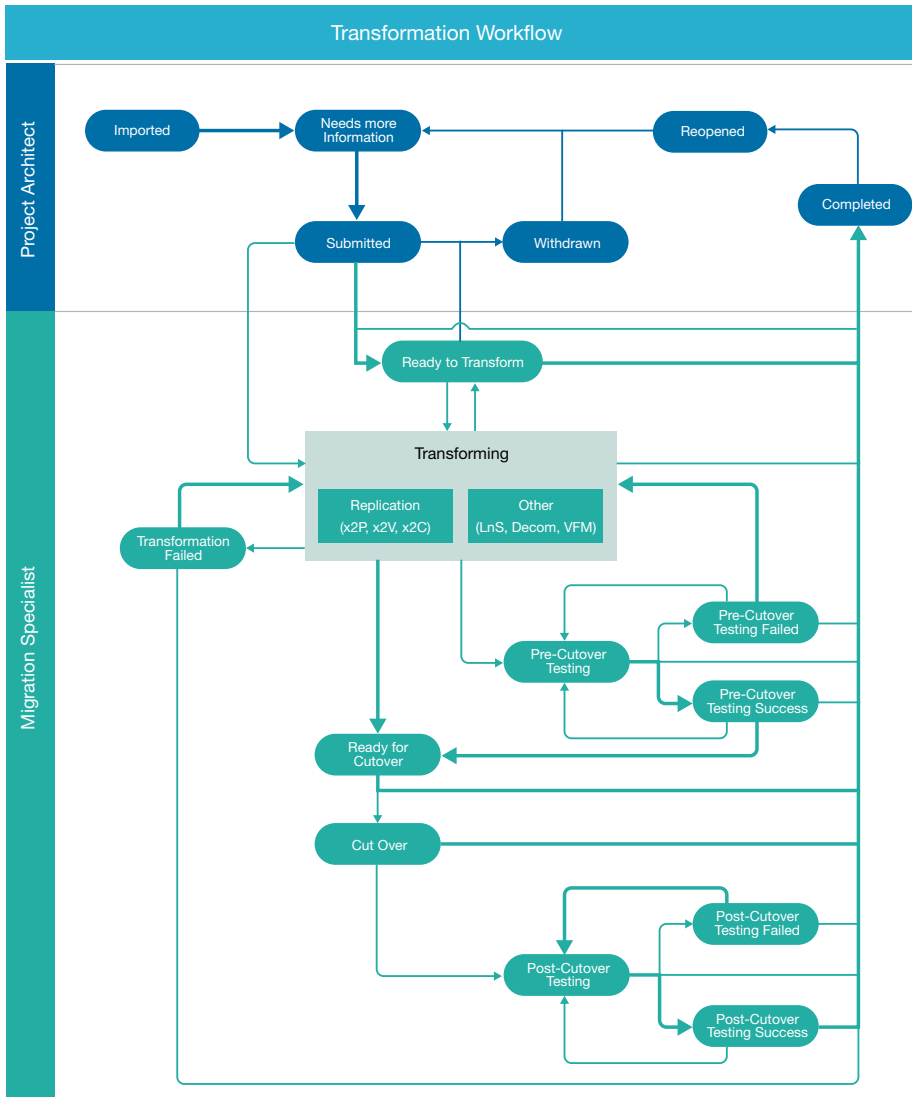
Some states are associated with the start date or cutover date for the workload's assigned batch. The state reports a Warning if that date has passed, but the expected action has not yet occurred.

---

**NOTE:** A **Retry** option is available for failed states that are recoverable conditions.

---

**Figure 21-1** The Transformation Workflow



**Table 21-1** State Descriptions

State	Description
Imported	The workload information has been imported as an original workload and a proposed workload. You have not yet modified the imported information. The workload is unlicensed until you begin to edit the workload information.
Needs Additional Info	You have modified the imported workload information directly in the Workload dialog or with a Batch Edit action. Some required values might be missing, or there might be errors to resolve. Edits include setting the schedule for the workload, modifying its proposed workload configuration, or adding required values.
Ready to Submit	All required values are present and there are no errors to resolve. A red Warning notice appears in the Status column if the start date for its assigned batch has passed.

State	Description
Submitted, Waiting for Start Date	The workload has been submitted for transformation, and the start date for its assigned batch is a future date. When the start date occurs, the workload's status automatically changes to Ready to Transform. The Migration Specialist can manually change the workload's status from Submitted to Transforming before the start date.
Ready to Transform	The workload is ready for transformation, and the start date for its assigned batch has passed.
Withdrawn	In Automated Mode, the submitted workload has been withdrawn because it needs changes for the planned transformation before the transformation process can continue.
Transforming	The Migration Specialist has begun the transformation process for the workload, such as replication methods (x2P, x2V, or x2C) or other methods (LnS, Decom, and VFM).
Transformation Failed	The transformation from original workload to proposed workload has been attempted and failed.
Ready to Cutover	The transformed workload is ready, waiting for the Cutover Date.
Pre-Cutover Testing	The transformed workload tests are in progress.  Pre-cutover testing can be selected at any time after the first full replication and before the Cutover Date arrives or Cutover starts.
Pre-Cutover Testing Succeeded	The transformed workload test succeeded, and the workload is ready for cutover.
Pre-Cutover Testing Failed	The transformed workload test failed. Repeat the transformation or the re-test the workload.
Cut Over	The workload has been cut over to its target network.
Post-Cutover Testing	After the cutover, tests on the cutover workload are in progress.
Post-Cutover Testing Succeeded	The tests on the cutover workload succeeded.
Post-Cutover Testing Failed	The tests on the cutover workload failed. Re-test the workload if needed.
Completed	The workload transformation process is completed.
Reopened	A completed workload transformation has been reopened because it needs changes for the planned transformation before the transformation process can continue.

## 21.1.6 Migration Sub Status

During automated migration, the PlateSpin Migrate server reports migration state events for the workload, referred to as its Migration Sub Status. You can search on Sub Status states in the Advanced Search dialog.

For a list of reportable migration state events, see [Section C.19, "Migration Sub Status," on page 237](#).

## 21.1.7 Discovery Status and Rediscovery

When a PlateSpin Migrate Connector is available to the project, the header area displays the discovery status of the workload below the Status.

After a successful discovery, a **Rediscovery** option is available. You might initiate rediscovery if you make manual changes to the source workload, such as adding NICs or modifying its assigned datastores. See [Section 20.7, “Rediscovering Workloads,” on page 143](#).

## 21.1.8 Last Modified

The Last Modified field shows the time stamp of the last modifications made directly in the Workload dialog, or indirectly by actions performed through import, discovery, and changes to the proposed workload or status.

## 21.1.9 License State

View the license state in the lower right corner of the header area of the Workload dialog. Mouse over the Licensed (green) icon to view the license date.



Licensed



Not licensed



License is not available

## 21.1.10 Transformation Plan

The Transformation Plan panel allows you to specify the following information for the workload transformation:

- ♦ **Project:** The parent project for the workload.
- ♦ **Wave:** The parent wave for the specified batch.
- ♦ **Batch:** The parent batch scheduled for this workload.
- ♦ **Start Date:** The planned start date for the workload transformation. The date must fall in the execution window for its parent batch, and occur before the cutover date.
  - ♦ **Time:** Specify the time of day to begin workload replication for the migration. The time is based on the time zone of the PlateSpin Migrate server that you will use to execute the migration.

---

**NOTE:** The actual start time might be delayed by a few minutes, based on the PlateSpin Migrate Connector polling interval for the PlateSpin Migrate server. The default interval is 5 minutes (300 seconds).

---

- ♦ **Cutover Date and Time:** The planned cutover date for the workload transformation. The date must fall in the execution window for its parent batch.
  - ♦ **Time:** Specify the time of day to begin the cutover execution. The time is based on the time zone of the PlateSpin Migrate server that you will use to execute the migration.

If the Cutover Date is the same as the Start Date, the Cutover Time must be after the Start Time.

---

**NOTE:** The actual start time might be delayed by a few minutes, based on the PlateSpin Migrate Connector polling interval for the PlateSpin Migrate server. The default interval is 5 minutes (300 seconds).

---

- ♦ **Transformation Method:** The transformation method to use for this workload. The options depend on the workload type of the original workload. See [Section 19.3, “Workload Transformation Methods,”](#) on page 136.
- ♦ **Migration Server:** The Migration Server resource that will be used to migrate the original workload to the proposed workload. Before you can select a Migration Server, you must first create Migration Server resources for your project in **Resources > Migration Servers**. See [Chapter 25, “Managing Migration Server Resources,”](#) on page 209.

---

**NOTE:** Migration Server selection is disabled if you enable Automated Migration.

---

You can save a Migration Server resource in an incomplete state without a URL and credentials. In this case, the Migration Server field displays the Migration Server resource name and the **Not configured** state in the Transformation Plan panel. When you later deploy the migration server in your environment, you should update the Migration Server resource with its URL and credentials. The resource state is automatically updated for all of its associated workloads.

- ♦ **Automated Migration:** Select the check box to enable the load-balanced automated assignment of migration jobs to PlateSpin Migrate servers. In Automated Mode, you can use Automated Migration as an alternative to assigning a specific Migration Server resource to each workload.

The Migrate Connector uses round-robin load-balancing to distribute workload migration jobs evenly across all of the PlateSpin Migrate servers in your project. It detects all currently running Migrate servers for the round-robin. When it receives a new workload migration request, the Connector assigns the workload to the next Migrate server in the sequence with available capacity and licenses.

After the workload is assigned to a Migrate server, a link to the workload in PlateSpin Migrate is available in the workload’s Workload dialog. You can follow the link to go directly to the workload on the assigned Migrate server.

---

**NOTE:** For Windows Cluster migration to target VMware hosts, the PlateSpin Migrate server must meet the prerequisites described in [“Preparing for Migration of Windows Clusters”](#) in the [PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide](#). If you use Automated Migration, ensure that all Migrate servers for the project satisfy these prerequisites.

---

- ♦ **On Hold:** Select the check box to put the workload in an On Hold state, where the workflow cannot progress. Deselect the option to remove the hold. Workloads in an On Hold state are dimmed in the Workloads list.

---

**NOTE:** The **On Hold** option in PTM also sets the **Pause Replication Schedule** option in PlateSpin Migrate for automated migration. It can be controlled from either product interface.

---

## 21.1.11 Migration Settings

The Migration Settings panel provides information about the default behaviors for the replication environment. This panel is available only for automated migration.

### General Settings

- ♦ **Disk Copy Method:** The method used to create an exact copy of volume data from the source disk to the target disk. Options for the data transfer are:
  - ♦ **Block with Driver:** A data transfer method that dynamically installs a special driver on the source workload to facilitate volume data transfer at the block level. It leverages snapshots if they are available. PlateSpin Migrate requires this option for all Linux workloads.

---

**IMPORTANT:** A reboot is required when the driver is installed on the source workload.

---

- ♦ **Block without Driver:** A driverless data transfer method for Windows workloads. It leverages snapshots if they are available, or it uses a driverless synchronization with an MD5-based replication.
  - ♦ **File:** A data transfer method for Windows workloads that copies data and replicates changes on a file-by-file basis.
- ♦ **Install Driver:** If you select Block with Driver as the disk copy method, you can specify when in the migration process to install the driver on the source workload.

---

**NOTE:** Installing the block-based driver requires a reboot of the source workload.

---

- ♦ **Prepare:** Installs the required data transfer software on the source workload and creates a target workload in preparation for the workload replication.
  - ♦ **First Replication:** Installs the required data transfer software on the source workload and begins the first full replication of the workload.
- ♦ **Compression Level:** Specify level of compression to apply to workload data before its transmission for replications to the target workload.
  - ♦ **Fast:** Consumes the least CPU resources on the source, but yields a lower compression ratio.
  - ♦ **Optimal:** (Recommended) Consumes optimal CPU resources on the source and yields an optimal compression ratio.
  - ♦ **Maximum:** Consumes the most CPU resources on the source, but yields a higher compression ratio.
  - ♦ **None:** No compression.
- ♦ **Perform daily incremental replication:** Select the check box to enable daily incremental replication to the target workload.
  - ♦ **Time:** Specify the time of day to run the incremental replication job. The time is based on the time zone of the PlateSpin Migrate server that you will use to execute the migration. The default run time is 1:00 a.m. in the time zone of the PlateSpin Migrate server.
- ♦ **Encrypt data:** Select the check box to enable encryption of data for transmission.
- ♦ **Pause workflow:** Select the check box enable the workflow to pause between the migration configuration and the workload prepare process.
- ♦ **Automatic cutover:** Select the check box to enable the automatic cutover of the workload when the cutover date is reached.
- ♦ **Perform replication with test cutover:** Select the check box to enable an incremental replication before executing the test cutover.



- ♦ **Perform replication with cutover:** Select the check box to enable an incremental replication before executing the cutover.
- ♦ **Shut down source during cutover:** Select the check box to enable the shut down of the source workload during the cutover.
- ♦ **Shut down target during cutover:** Select the check box to enable the shut down of the target workload during the cutover.

### Replication Network

- ♦ **Network:** Select the network resource assigned to the target host machine.
- ♦ **MTU:** The *Maximum Transmission Unit* setting in bytes that represents the largest packet size that can be used on the replication network. Valid values are 68 to 65535. For example, most Ethernet networks support an MTU setting of 1500 bytes. On a VPN, the MTU value is typically smaller than 1500 bytes.  
  
Specify an MTU setting that matches the smallest MTU setting on the replication network path between the source workload and the target workload. If a packet is larger than the MTU value of an interface, the packet might be split into smaller packets, or it might be dropped. Both packet fragmentation and retransmission introduce latency and congestion that can dramatically increase the replication time. Tuning a workload's MTU value for its replication network helps avoid these conditions, which optimizes the transmission performance and minimizes replication time.
- ♦ **Use DHCP to get network address details:** This setting is enabled by default. Deselect the check box to specify static IP addresses, then specify the network address settings for the replication network.
  - ♦ **IP Address:** IPv4 format.
  - ♦ **Subnet Mask:** IPv4 format.
  - ♦ **Default Gateway:** IPv4 format.
  - ♦ **DNS Servers:** IPv4 format. For multiple entries, specify one DNS server per line.

## 21.1.12 Workload

The Workload panel displays the original workload configuration that was imported or re-imported using the Spreadsheet Import feature. Initially, the proposed workload has the same configuration. You can edit the configuration of the proposed workload.

### Workload Details

- ♦ **Host Name:** The simple host name (or machine name) for the workload, not its FQDN. Example: `sqlserver10`
- ♦ **Domain Name:** The name of the domain that the proposed workload will join. Examples: `digitalair.com`, `paris.digitalair.com`
- ♦ **Admin Credentials:** (Optional) Select the Credentials resource to use to authenticate to a specified source workload.
- ♦ **Operating System:** The specified value from the OS Types list.
- ♦ **Architecture:** This value is inherited from the specified operating system.
- ♦ **Description:** (Optional) A textual description of the workload, such as information about migration constraints or dependencies.
- ♦ **Workload Type:** Cloud, Physical, or Virtual. This value is inherited from the transformation method.

## Workload Resources

- ♦ **Amount of RAM:** The amount of memory for the workload in MB, GB, TB, PB, EB, ZB, or YB.
- ♦ **# Sockets:** The number of sockets installed on the workload.
- ♦ **# Cores per Socket:** The number of cores in each socket. The total number of cores for the workload is the cores per socket times the number of sockets.

## Windows Settings

The Windows Settings area is available for Windows virtual workloads.

- ♦ **Domain or Workgroup:** Specify whether the Windows workload is a member of a domain or a workgroup, then specify the name.
  - ♦ **Domain:** Specify its domain name, such as `PARIS` or `paris.digitalair.com`.
  - ♦ **Workload:** Specify its workgroup name, such as `WORKGROUP`.
- ♦ **Domain Credentials:** If you specified Domain, select the Credentials resource for the domain administrator account needed to join the workload to the existing domain.

## 21.1.13 Location

The Location panel provides information about where the proposed workload resides in the network:

### Host

- ♦ **Environment:** The environment resource assigned to the workload.
- ♦ **Cloud Provider:** (Type: Cloud) The cloud provider that hosts the workload:
  - ♦ Amazon Web Services
  - ♦ Microsoft Azure
  - ♦ Rackspace
  - ♦ vCloud
  - ♦ Google
- ♦ **Hypervisor:** (Type: Virtual) The type of hypervisor that hosts the workload's VM:
  - ♦ Citrix XenServer
  - ♦ Linux KVM
  - ♦ Microsoft Hyper-V
  - ♦ SUSE Xen
  - ♦ VMware
- ♦ **Host:** (Type: Virtual) The Host resource to use for the target host.
- ♦ **Site:** The geographic location or facility where the workload network resides. Example: London
- ♦ **Hardware:** The vendor or model of hardware used by the workload. Example: Dell PowerEdge
- ♦ **Enclosure:** The location of the workload in the data center. Example: Rack A-31
- ♦ **Slot:** The slot number in the rack for the host machine. Example: 8

### Virtual Machine Settings

- ♦ **VM Name:** The name of the VM used for the workload. The default value is the host name of the workload.

- ♦ **Resource Pool:** (VMware) Select the Resource Pool resource where the target VM will be created on the VMware host.
- ♦ **VM Config Datastore:** The Datastore resource that contains the VM configuration file.
- ♦ **Path on Datastore:** The path to the VM configuration file.
- ♦ **Install VMware Tools:** (VMware) Specify whether to install VMware tools on the target virtual workload running on a VMware host.

## 21.1.14 Network Interfaces

The Network Interfaces panel defines information about each NIC on the workload. You cannot delete the source NIC information provided during the import, but you can add, edit, and delete other NICs for the target workload.

You must have at least one NIC for the source workload and one NIC for the target workload. You cannot delete the last remaining NIC in the list. You must create another NIC first, and then delete the unwanted NIC.

If you have multiple NICs on the source workload, specify which NIC to use for replication.

- ♦ **Interface Name:** The name for the NIC. Example: `eth0`
- ♦ **Network:** The network resource assigned to the workload. If you have multiple NICs, this setting is required for each NIC.
- ♦ **MAC Address:** (Planning Mode) MAC address of the source workload NIC in the format of 00-00-00-00-00-0c.

For proposed workloads, the MAC address is assigned by the target workload. The address is not tracked for planning.

- ♦ **VLAN ID:** The network VLAN that carries the workload traffic.
- ♦ **Connect on boot:** The NIC is automatically set to connect to the network on boot.
- ♦ **Use DHCP to get network address details:** This setting is enabled by default. Deselect the check box to specify a static IP address, then specify the network address settings for the target network.
  - ♦ **IP Address:** IPv4 format.
  - ♦ **Subnet Mask:** IPv4 format.
  - ♦ **Default Gateway:** IPv4 format.

---

**NOTE:** If the source workload or target workload is located in a different internal (private) network behind a network address translation (NAT) device, it might be unable to communicate with its counterpart to replicate the workload. On the affected workload, ensure that you specify a public IP address for the NIC you use for replication.

---

- ♦ **Use DHCP to get name servers:** Specify whether the DNS name is acquired from the DHCP server in the associated network. This option is enabled by default. If you use static IP addresses, deselect this option, then provide the following information:
  - ♦ **DNS Servers:** IPv4 format. For multiple entries, specify one DNS server per line. You can specify a Primary, Secondary, and Advanced DNS server.
  - ♦ **Search Domains:** FQDN of one or more search domains.
- ♦ **Use for Replication:** On the Network Interfaces panel, specify whether to use the NIC for replication communications. The default value is **Yes**. At least one of the NICs must be enabled for replication.

## 21.1.15 Testing Network Interfaces

The Testing Network Interfaces panel is available for Transformation Types that support testing. the panel is shown for workloads in Planning mode, as appropriate for tracked external migrations and manual external migrations.

Use this panel to define information about each NIC on the workload for a testing environment. You cannot delete the source NIC information provided during the import, but you can add, edit, and delete other NICs for the target workload.

For information about setting network options, see [Section 21.1.14, “Network Interfaces,” on page 155](#).

## 21.1.16 Storage

The Storage panel defines information about the storage mapping strategy and about the mounted volumes on the workload. You cannot modify information for the source workload. To update the source workload disk and volume information, you can rediscover the source workload if you are using auto-discovery, or update the Bulk Import Spreadsheet and import the workload again using the Spreadsheet Import.

### Storage Mapping Strategy

The mapping strategy translates the layout of storage disks and volumes from the source workload to a proposed layout in the destination storage location. In Planning mode, you can keep the resulting proposed layout, or modify the disk details for a custom mapped solution.

- ♦ **Same as source:** Storage objects for the target volumes and disks will be configured in the destination storage location using the same layout, size, and format as the source workload. For the proposed workload, you can select a datastore and path for target VMware environments, and define a remote path for SAN and NAS devices.
- ♦ **Custom:** In Planning Mode, you can add, edit, and remove volume groups, volumes, disks, and partitions. You can also restore the settings to the Same as Source settings for the original volumes and disks.

### Volumes Tab

The Volumes tab allows you to view and configure the proposed volume layout on the proposed workload from a volume perspective.

- ♦ **Volumes:** A tree-view list of volumes and volume groups on the proposed workload.
  - ♦ **Name:** The name of the volume group or its member volumes.
  - ♦ **File System:** The file system format for the partition, such as Ext3, Linux-swap, NTFS, unallocated, extended, and so on.
  - ♦ **Size:** The total amount of space in the units specified that are allocated to the volume group or its child volumes. The unused amount of space available in the volume or volume group displays below the size.
  - ♦ **Cluster Size:** (Windows) For NTFS volumes, specifies the block allocation size.
  - ♦ **Type:** The type of storage object and file system for the selected volume:

#### Example Storage Types:

- ♦ Dynamic Mirrored
- ♦ Dynamic RAID 5
- ♦ Dynamic Simple

- ♦ Dynamic Spanned
- ♦ Dynamic Striped
- ♦ Local
- ♦ NAS
- ♦ SAN
- ♦ Swap
- ♦ System
- ♦ Volume

#### Example File System Types:

- ♦ NTFS
- ♦ Ext4
- ♦ **Mount Point:** The path on the workload where the volume can be mounted, such as `/mnt/data2`. The volume might be mounted or unmounted.
- ♦ **Datastore:** The name of the VM datastore to use for the volume. The remote path to the virtual disk file in the datastore appears under the datastore name.
- ♦ **Path on Datastore:** For a datastore, specify the path on the datastore for the volume.
- ♦ **Remote Path:** The remote path for a SAN or Network Attached Storage.
- ♦ **Devices:** The devices and partitions used by the selected volume group or volume.

### Disks Tab

The Disks tab allows you to view and configure the proposed disk and partition layout on the proposed workload.

- ♦ **Disks:** A tree-view list of disks and partitions on the proposed workload.
  - ♦ **Name:** The name of the parent disk and its child partitions.
  - ♦ **Size:** The total amount of space in the units specified that is allocated to a disk and its partitions. The amount of unallocated available space displays below the size.
  - ♦ **Volume:** The name of the volume that resides on the child partition.
  - ♦ **Type:** The type of storage object as disk or partition. The Partition type includes the file system format, such as Ext3, Linux-swap, NTFS, unallocated, extended, and so on.
  - ♦ **Datastore:** The name of the VM datastore to use for the disk. The path to the virtual disk file in the datastore appears under the datastore name.
- ♦ **Disk Details:** Select a partition in the Disks list to view or modify details about its disk and volume for the proposed workload.
  - ♦ **Type:** The type of storage object (disk or partition).
  - ♦ **Size:** The total amount of space allocated to a disk or partition in the units specified.
  - ♦ **Name:** The name of the volume or volume group, such as `Network_Share_11-T1`.
  - ♦ **Mount Point:** The path on the workload where the volume can be mounted, such as `/mnt/data2`. The volume might be mounted or unmounted.
  - ♦ **Volume:** The name of the volume that resides on the partition.
  - ♦ **Unallocated:** The amount of free space available in the disk or partition in the units specified.

- ♦ **Virtual Disk Details:** Select a partition in the Disks list to view or modify details about its virtual disk and volume for the proposed workload. Customizing the mapped disk or volume is optional.
  - ♦ **Datastore:** The name of the VMware datastore for the target VM to use.
  - ♦ **Path on Datastore:** The path to the virtual disk file (.vmdk) in the selected datastore.
  - ♦ **Disk Provisioning:** The virtual disk provisioning policy to use on VMware for the virtual disk.
    - ♦ **Thin Disk:** Creates a disk in a space-efficient sparse disk format that can grow to the size is provisioned at creation time.
    - ♦ **Thick Disk:** Creates a virtual disk in a type of thick virtual disk that supports clustering features such as fault tolerance. Space required for the virtual disk is allocated at creation time.

## 21.1.17 Applications

The Applications panel identifies the applications installed on the workload. You can add or remove applications for the proposed workload.

## 21.1.18 Custom Fields

The Custom Fields panel allows you to specify values for the Custom Fields 1-7 that are defined for the project. Custom Fields are available only if they are defined for the project and the project is selected in the Global Project Selector when you open the Workload dialog.


## 21.1.19 Transformation History

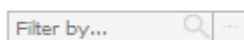
The Transformation History panel displays the most recent workflow state changes, migration sub-state changes, or user-provided notes for the workload. Each state change triggers an entry. You can also enter user notes to be logged, such as manual changes and actions performed for the workload.

The Transformation History can distinguish whether the action was initiated by a User, a Migrate server, or a Connector (if you assign a dedicated User object for the Connector login credentials).

## 21.2 Viewing the Workloads List

The Workloads tab allows you to track key settings and status for each workload. Use the following tips to manipulate the page and view various status and details.

- ♦ Set the Global Project Selector to the project of interest to list only workloads for that project.
- ♦ View the list based on details for the Original workload or for the Proposed workload.
- ♦ Mouse over the Status or Sub Status states to view details about the event or error conditions.
- ♦ Use the Filter to perform a simple search on the list. Use the Advanced Search  to search on a variety of workload settings, custom fields, status, and health. See [Section 21.4, “Locating Workloads with the Filter and Advanced Search,”](#) on page 160.



- ♦ Select a Health warning type to quickly list all workloads that are in a specific state. For example, Not cut over, but cutover date has passed. See [Section C.17, “Workload Health,”](#) on page 235.

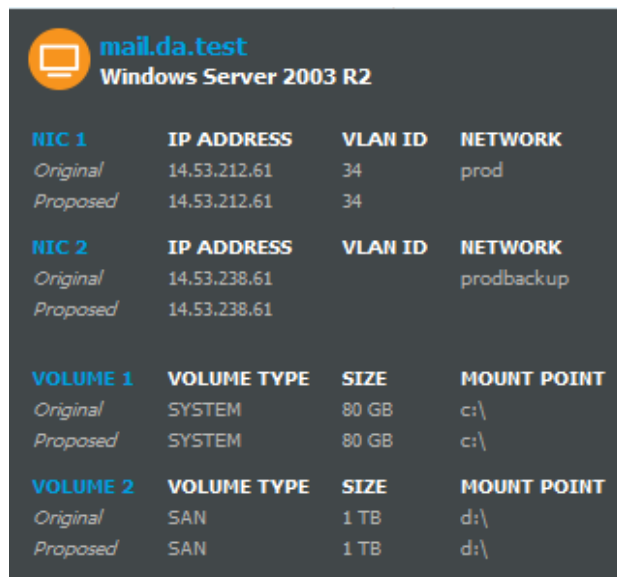
- ♦ Double-click the tab title to force any list to refresh immediately, regardless of its normal polling cycle.
- ♦ Mouse over the tab title to view the total number of items in the list and the total number of selected items currently selected in the list.
- ♦ A **Retry** option is available when you select a workload in a failed state that is a recoverable condition.
- ♦ A **Rediscover** option is available when you select a workload that was previously successfully discovered.

## 21.3 Viewing a Workload NIC and Volume Summary

The Workload Summary allows you to view key original and proposed workload information without opening the Edit Workload dialog. The information pops up as a tool-tip when you mouse over the workload name.

**To view the workload NIC and disk summary:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the **Filter** and **Advanced Search** options to locate the workload of interest.
- 3 (Optional) Mouse over a workload name to view a summary of its original workload and proposed workload configurations for NICs and volumes.



The screenshot shows a dark-themed pop-up window titled 'mail.da.test' with a sub-header 'Windows Server 2003 R2'. It contains two tables. The first table, 'NIC 1', has columns 'IP ADDRESS', 'VLAN ID', and 'NETWORK', with rows for 'Original' and 'Proposed' configurations. The second table, 'NIC 2', has the same columns and rows. Below these are two volume tables, 'VOLUME 1' and 'VOLUME 2', with columns 'VOLUME TYPE', 'SIZE', and 'MOUNT POINT', also showing 'Original' and 'Proposed' configurations.


mail.da.test Windows Server 2003 R2			
<b>NIC 1</b>	<b>IP ADDRESS</b>	<b>VLAN ID</b>	<b>NETWORK</b>
Original	14.53.212.61	34	prod
Proposed	14.53.212.61	34	
<b>NIC 2</b>	<b>IP ADDRESS</b>	<b>VLAN ID</b>	<b>NETWORK</b>
Original	14.53.238.61		prodbackup
Proposed	14.53.238.61		
<b>VOLUME 1</b>	<b>VOLUME TYPE</b>	<b>SIZE</b>	<b>MOUNT POINT</b>
Original	SYSTEM	80 GB	c:\
Proposed	SYSTEM	80 GB	c:\
<b>VOLUME 2</b>	<b>VOLUME TYPE</b>	<b>SIZE</b>	<b>MOUNT POINT</b>
Original	SAN	1 TB	d:\
Proposed	SAN	1 TB	d:\


- 4 Move the mouse away from the workload name to exit the summary pop-up.

## 21.4 Locating Workloads with the Filter and Advanced Search

The Filter and Advanced Search tools allow you to locate one or more workloads that you want to perform actions on. It is an easy way to select multiple workloads to assign to batches or to modify transformation information.

- 1 In the Web Interface, click the **Global Project Selector**, then select the project of interest.
- 2 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 In the **Filter**, type characters to search for values in the searchable columns. The filter applies immediately to the list as you type the characters.

You can click the **Clear Filter**  icon to clear the field and remove the filter.

- 4 Click the **Advanced Search** icon  to narrow the search by specifying your desired search parameters and values.


The Advanced Search dialog is a multiple-option form that allows you to search on any combination of the following parameters for Workloads that make sense for the target of your search:

Project	Workload Type	Total Storage	Network
Wave	Transform Method	Single Disk Size	VLAN ID
Batch	Environment	Cores per Socket	Status
Hostname	Site	Amount of Memory	Sub Status
OS Type	Enclosure	On Hold	Health
Application	Custom 1	Custom 2	Custom 3
Custom 4	Custom 5	Custom 6	Custom 7

**NOTE:** Each custom field that you define for a project appears in the form if the Global Project Selector is set to a specific project.

Click **Clear** to reset the Advanced Search and try again with different fields.

- 5 After you have narrowed the list to the items of interest, click in the list to exit the Advanced Search dialog.

The Advanced Search icon is blue  if any of the options are active in the search dialog.

- 6 Mouse over the Workloads tab to see the number of total items in the list.
- 7 In the filtered Workloads list, view the workloads listed in the search results. Use the scroll bar to navigate up and down through the items. See [Section 4.9, “Scrolling Up and Down in Lists,” on page 55](#).
- 8 (Optional) Select multiple items in the list to perform Bulk Edit or Bulk Status Change actions on the selected workloads. See [Section 4.10, “Multiple Item Selection in Lists,” on page 55](#).
- 9 Mouse over the Workloads tab to see the number of total items in the list and the total number of selected items.



## 21.5 Viewing Workload Details for Automated Transformations

The Workloads list provides key information and statistics about each workload. The **View** option on the Workloads tab allows users with only the View permissions to view transformation details for a selected workload.

**To view transformation details for a workload:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 In the **Workloads** list, use the Filter and Advanced Search to locate the appropriate workload.
- 3 Select the workload, then click **View** to open the Workload dialog.
- 4 View the workload information.
- 5 Click **Close** when you are done.

## 21.6 Tracking Workload Status for External Migrations

PlateSpin Transformation Manager tracks external migration workflow for imported workloads with matching workload migrations performed on PlateSpin Migrate servers. Transformation Manager reports the status, but it does not automate or control the workflow. The PlateSpin Migrate Connector retrieves state change events as a subscriber of each Migrate server's event messaging system, and sends state information to the appropriate project and workload.

---

**NOTE:** Transformation Manager ignores migrations on the project's PlateSpin Migrate servers for workloads that have not been imported to your project. After you import a workload, the Connector seeks a match during subsequent scans of the Migrate servers, then begins tracking states for the matching workload.

---

The tracked status displays in the Status column of the Workloads list and in the header area of the Workload dialog for the workload.

- [Section 21.6.1, "About Tracking External Migrations," on page 161](#)
- [Section 21.6.2, "Checklist for Tracking External Migrations," on page 162](#)

### 21.6.1 About Tracking External Migrations

PlateSpin Transformation Manager tracks the status of external migrations for matching workloads on the Migrate server, whether they are initiated through the Migrate Web Interface or the Migrate Web Client. The Migrate REST APIs return more information for migrations configured and executed using the Migrate Web Interface, as identified in [Table 21-2](#).

**Table 21-2** Information Reported by Migrate for External Migrations

Information	Migrate Client	Migrate Web Interface
Proposed configuration	Not available to PTM	Displayed as read only in the Workload dialog.
State events	Limited events. See <a href="#">Table 21-3</a> .	Same events reported for PTM automated migrations.

Table 21-3 describes the status events for migrations in the Migrate Client.

**Table 21-3** States Reported for Migrations Executed in PlateSpin Migrate Client

Migrate Client Migration Job Status	Description
Added	The source workload has been added to Migrate Client.
In Progress	A replication has started.
Replicated	A replication has ended.
Copied	A replication has ended. The source is up.
Completed	The workload has been cut over to the target workload. The source is down.
Removed	The workload has been removed from Migrate Client.
Stuck	A recoverable error occurred.
Error	A non-recoverable error occurred.

You can import workloads to PTM and the project's Migrate servers in any order. When you import workloads using the PlateSpin Transformation Manager discovery service, the Connector scans the Migration Server resources to match the workload with external migration jobs you set up using the Migrate Client. It does not match workloads set in Automated Mode.

The Connector checks for matching external workloads on the project's PlateSpin Migrate servers when the following events occur:

- ♦ When you import workloads to PTM for a project set to Planning Mode
- ♦ When you modify the Mode from Automated to Planning for an individual workload
- ♦ When you launch or restart the Migrate Connector
- ♦ When you add a Migrate Server as a Migration Server resource for the project
- ♦ When the Connector subscribes to event messages from a new Migration Server resource
- ♦ When the Connector polls for events (every 5 minutes by default)

## 21.6.2 Checklist for Tracking External Migrations

PlateSpin Transformation Manager begins tracking an external migration when the PlateSpin Migrate Connector matches an imported workload in Planning Mode with a discovered workload on any of the project's PlateSpin Migrate servers. Tracking capabilities require that you complete the tasks outlined in the checklist in Table 21-4.

**Table 21-4** Checklist for Tracking External Migrations

Status	Task	Notes
<b>In your PlateSpin Migration Factory environment:</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Deploy one or more PlateSpin Migrate servers.	See the <a href="#">PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 Installation and Upgrade Guide</a> .

Status	Task	Notes
<input type="checkbox"/>	For each Migrate server, enable the Event Messaging port (61613) for communication with the PlateSpin Migrate Connector instance assigned to the project.	See <a href="#">“Enabling Event Messaging for PlateSpin Migration Factory”</a> in the <i>PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide</i> .
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ensure that your network environment meets the PTM requirements for networking.	See <a href="#">Section 2.3, “Network Connectivity and Access Requirements,”</a> on page 34.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Deploy and configure a PlateSpin Migrate Connector for the PTM project in the network with source servers.	See <a href="#">“Installing, Upgrading, or Uninstalling PlateSpin Migrate Connector”</a> in the <i>PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start</i> .  See <a href="#">“Configuring a Project Assignment for a Connector Instance”</a> in the <i>PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start</i> .
<b>In PlateSpin Transformation Manager:</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable Planning Mode for the Project if you want workloads to inherit the Planning Mode setting on import.	See <a href="#">“About Projects”</a> on page 115.  After import, you can set the Mode value to Planning on an individual workload by using the Workload dialog. See <a href="#">“Transformation Plan”</a> on page 150.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Configure one or more Credential resources to use for access to your PlateSpin Migrate servers.	See <a href="#">“Creating a Credential”</a> on page 196.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Configure your PlateSpin Migrate servers as Migration Server resources in the project, and specify a valid Credential resource.	See <a href="#">“Creating a Migration Server Resource”</a> on page 210.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Import and discover workloads for PTM.	See <a href="#">“Importing and Discovering Workloads”</a> on page 137.  Tracking begins when Migrate Connector matches the imported workload in the PTM project with an external workload on any one of the PlateSpin Migrate servers.
<b>On the project’s PlateSpin Migrate servers:</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Prepare your target migration environment.	See <a href="#">“Preparing Your Migration Environment”</a> in the <i>PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide</i> .
<input type="checkbox"/>	Discover and prepare the workload on any one of the project’s Migrate servers.	See <a href="#">“Discovering and Preparing Workloads and Targets”</a> in the <i>PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide</i> .  Tracking begins when Migrate Connector matches the discovered Migrate workload with an imported workload in the PTM project.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Configure the workload for migration using the Migrate Client or Migrate Web Interface, as appropriate for the target platform.	See <a href="#">“Configuring Workloads”</a> in the <i>PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide</i> .
<input type="checkbox"/>	Execute the migration using the Migrate Client or Migrate Web Interface, as appropriate.	See <a href="#">“Executing Migrations”</a> in the <i>PlateSpin Migrate 12.2.1 User Guide</i> .

## 21.7 Editing the Workload Transformation

The initial workload import creates an original workload and a proposed workload. You use the Workload dialog for the workload to set the appropriate configuration for the transformation and proposed workload.

---

**Users Who Can Perform These Tasks:** System Administrator, Project Manager, Project Architect

---

For information about the various parameters for the workload, see [Section 21.1, “About the Workload Dialog,”](#) on page 145.

**To configure the transformation and proposed workload for a single workload:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the **Filter** and **Advanced Search** options to locate the workload of interest.
- 3 (Optional) Mouse over a workload **Name** to view a summary of its original workload and proposed workload configurations.
- 4 Double-click the workload you want to modify to open its Workload dialog. You can alternatively select the workload, and then click **Edit**.
- 5 Modify the workload information on the Workload dialog as appropriate:
  - ♦ Status
  - ♦ License
  - ♦ Transformation Plan
  - ♦ Migration Settings
  - ♦ Workload
  - ♦ Location
  - ♦ Network Interfaces
  - ♦ Testing Network Interfaces
  - ♦ Storage
  - ♦ Applications
  - ♦ Custom Fields
  - ♦ Transformation History

As you work in the various panels in the Workload dialog, you can double-click in the header to refresh the dialog page.

- 6 Use the following to save your changes for now, to submit the workload as ready for execution, or to return to a submitted workload to make changes:
  - ♦ Select **Mark In Progress** to keep the workload available for additional changes. This allows errors to exist until you return to make additional modifications.
  - ♦ When you have resolved all errors and provided the appropriate transformation details, click **Submit** to indicate that the workload is ready for transformation.

---

**NOTE:** In Automated Mode, you cannot submit a workload transformation that has not been successfully discovered.

---

## 21.8 Configuring the Source NIC to Use for Replication

If you have multiple NICs for a source workload, you must specify which NIC to use for replication.

**To enable a NIC for Replication:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the **Filter** and **Advanced Search** options to locate the workload of interest.
- 3 Double-click the workload you want to modify to open its Workload dialog. You can alternatively select the workload, and then click **Edit**.
- 4 Scroll down to view the Network Interfaces panel and locate the NIC you want to use for replication.
- 5 Under the Original workload, click **Enable** to set **Use for Replication** to **Yes**. At least one source NIC must be enabled.
- 6 Click **Close**.

## 21.9 Editing a Workload Transformation after Submit

You can modify the following settings for the workload transformation after you submit the workload without needing to withdraw it:

- ♦ **Transformation Plan**
  - ♦ Wave
  - ♦ Batch
  - ♦ Start Date and Time
  - ♦ Cutover Date and Time
  - ♦ On Hold
- ♦ **Transformation History**
  - ♦ User-provided notes

**To modify the plan or add a note for a single workload:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select the project in the Global Project Selector.
- 2 Select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 Use the **Filter** and **Advanced Search** options to locate the workload of interest.
- 4 Double-click the workload you want to modify to open its Workload dialog. You can alternatively select the workload, and then click **Edit**.
- 5 In the Transformation Plan panel, click **Edit**, then modify the schedule information as needed.
- 6 In the Transformation History panel, click **View**, then add notes as needed.
- 7 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

**To modify the plan of one or more workloads using Bulk Edit:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select the project in the Global Project Selector.
- 2 Select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 Use the **Filter** and **Advanced Search** options to locate the workloads of interest.
- 4 Select the specific workloads you want to modify.

- 5 Click **Bulk Edit**.
  - 6 (Optional) Modify the plan settings as needed:
    - ♦ **Wave**
    - ♦ **Batch**
    - ♦ **Remove from Batch and Wave**
    - ♦ **Start Date and Time**
    - ♦ **Cutover Date and Time**
    - ♦ **On Hold**
  - 7 Click **Apply**.
  - 8 Review the change confirmation, then click **Proceed**.
- Workloads dimmed in an On Hold state are dimmed in the Workloads list.

## 21.10 Bulk Edit for Multiple Proposed Workloads

The Bulk Edit function is a powerful editor that allows you to apply the same parameter setting to multiple selected workloads at a time. Each parameter is independent, and applies separately against a set of selected workloads. Bulk Edit validates each value against the type of workload and other characteristics to ensure that the change is made only if the setting is a valid option for that workload. This safeguard allows you to concurrently edit a set of diverse workloads that have a logical relationship that is meaningful to your network environment.

- ♦ [“About Bulk Edit” on page 166](#)
- ♦ [“Selecting Workloads for Bulk Edit” on page 170](#)
- ♦ [“Applying a Bulk Edit” on page 170](#)

### 21.10.1 About Bulk Edit

The Bulk Edit dialog title area provides information about the number of workloads that you have preselected in the Workloads list before opening the Bulk Edit dialog. A System Administrator and users with Project Manager or Project Architect roles in multiple projects are able to select workloads across projects.

If a specified parameter value applies to one or more selected workloads, the confirmation dialog identifies the number of affected workloads, the number of skipped workloads, and the issues that resulted in skipped workloads.

---

**NOTE:** If you specify values for multiple parameters in the same bulk edit request, the confirmation dialog does not present all of the various matching conditions for the remainder of the parameters. It reports on only the first match it encounters. Thus, if you seek clear cause-and-effect reporting, you should edit only one parameter setting at a time in your bulk edit request.

---

Workloads might be skipped if the specified change or value is not valid for the workload type. For example, Host and Datastore changes apply only to target virtual workloads, or to workloads where the Transformation Method is unknown. Cloud Provider applies only to target cloud workloads, or to workloads where the Transformation Method is unknown.

Some actions cannot be performed against a selected workload based on the workload state:

- ♦ Values for workloads in a Submitted or later state are not editable. You must withdraw the workload to return it to an editable state.
- ♦ Values for workloads in a Completed state are not editable. For workloads in Planning Mode, you can reopen the workload to return it to an editable state. If the Completed state was initiated from a parent wave, batch, or project, you must reopen the parents first.

Table 21-5 describes values displayed in the Bulk Edit dialog header. It tallies the number of total workloads currently selected and the number of projects represented in that list. Bulk edit allows editing across projects based on the permissions of the roles associated with the logged in user.

**Table 21-5** Bulk Edit Status about Selected Workloads

Parameter	Description
Number of workloads selected	The number of workloads that you have preselected in the Workloads list before opening the Bulk Edit dialog.
Number of projects represented	A System Administrator and users with Project Manager or Project Architect roles in multiple projects are able to select workloads across projects.

Table 21-6 describes wave, batch, and network parameters that apply for workloads in a single project at a time. When you select values, it narrows the action to workloads for a specific project. After you apply the change for one project, you can clear the Project field, and select different values to isolate a second Project, and so on until all appropriate changes are complete.

**Table 21-6** Bulk Edit Parameters for a Single Project at a Time

Parameter	Description
Project	<p>The Project value is informational if you preset the Global Project Selector. All selected workloads belong to that project.</p> <p>If you select any of the project-specific parameters, the Project value represents the project related to your selected value. All remaining project-related parameter values are restricted based on that choice.</p>
Wave	This option reflects the parent wave of the target batch and sets the Project value if it is not set.
Batch	<p>Set the target batch assignment for the selected workloads. It sets the parent wave and project if they are not set.</p> <p>Each workload inherits the dates from the newly assigned batch. Manual date settings override inheritance. If manual dates fall outside the new execution window, the affected dates display in a red font in the Workloads list and the Workload dialog.</p>
Remove from Batch and Wave	Move selected workloads out of their current assigned batches and waves.

Parameter	Description
VLAN ID	<p>For any network, change the VLAN ID:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ From any value to the specified value.</li> <li>♦ From a specified value to a new specified value.</li> </ul> <p>For a specified network, change the VLAN ID:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ From any value to the specified value.</li> <li>♦ From a specified value to a new specified value.</li> </ul>
Network resource	<p>For any NIC, change the Network resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ From any value to the specified value.</li> <li>♦ From a specified value to a new specified value.</li> </ul> <p>For a specified NIC, change the network resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ From any value to the specified value.</li> <li>♦ From a specified value to a new specified value.</li> </ul>
Host resource	<p>Change the Host resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ From any value to the new specified value.</li> <li>♦ From a specified value to a new specified value.</li> </ul> <p>The Host resource setting applies only to virtual target workloads, or to workloads where the Transformation Method is not currently set.</p>
Datastore resource	<p>Change the Datastore resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ From any value to the new specified value.</li> <li>♦ From a specified value to a new specified value.</li> </ul> <p>The Datastore resource setting applies to virtual workloads, or to workloads where the Transformation Method is not currently set.</p>
Migration Server resource	<p>Change the Migration Server resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ From any value to the new specified value.</li> <li>♦ From a specified value to a new specified value.</li> </ul>
Replication network	<p>Change the Replication network:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ From any network to the new specified network.</li> <li>♦ From a specified network to a new specified network.</li> </ul>

[Table 21-7](#) describes parameters that apply to all selected workloads that are in an editable state.



**Table 21-7** Bulk Edit Parameters for a Single Project or Multiple Projects

Parameter	Description
Transformation Method	<p>Specify the transformation method. The setting applies only to workloads where the source workload type matches.</p> <p>For example, Physical to Cloud modifies the proposed transformation type only for physical source workloads in the selected workloads.</p>
Disk Copy Method	Specify the disk copy method: block with driver (reboot is required), block without driver, and file.
Cloud Provider	<p>Specify a cloud provider for the cloud workloads.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The Cloud Provider setting applies to cloud workloads, or to workloads where the Transformation Method is not currently set.</p>
Applications	Specify the application you want to add to selected workloads. You can apply only one application at a time to selected workloads.
Start Date	Set the start date of the transformation execution.
Start Time	<p>Set the time of day to begin the transformation execution. Select from a list of times in 15-minute increments. The time is based on the time zone of the PlateSpin Migrate server that you will use to execute the migration.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The actual start time might be delayed by a few minutes, based on the PlateSpin Migrate Connector polling interval for the PlateSpin Migrate server. The default interval is 5 minutes (300 seconds).</p>
Cutover Date	Set the cutover date for the workload.
Cutover Time	<p>Set the time of day to begin the cutover execution. Select from a list of times in 15-minute increments. The time is based on the time zone of the PlateSpin Migrate server that you will use to execute the migration.</p> <p>If the Start Date and Cutover Date are the same, the Cutover Time must be after the Start time.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The actual start time might be delayed by a few minutes, based on the PlateSpin Migrate Connector polling interval for the PlateSpin Migrate server. The default interval is 5 minutes (300 seconds).</p>
On Hold	Select True to pause the workload transformation workflow for the selected workloads.
Amount of Memory	Specify the size of the target memory.
Custom Fields	<p>Each custom field that you define for a project appears in the form if the Global Project Selector is set to a specific project.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The custom fields display only when a single project is actively selected or specified by the Global Project Selector.</p>

## 21.10.2 Selecting Workloads for Bulk Edit

Before you open the Bulk Edit dialog, use the Global Project Selector, Filter, Advanced Search, sort, and multiple select functions to refine the Workloads list and select the workloads for action. You can pre-select any number of workloads for concurrent bulk editing actions.

**To select the workloads for a bulk edit action:**

- 1 (Conditional) To work with workloads for a single project, click the **Project Selector**, then select the project of interest.
- 2 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 Use the Filter and Advanced Search options to refine the workloads list.
- 4 Use the multiple-select functions to select one or more workloads that you want to modify in the same way.
- 5 Mouse over the Workloads tab to view the number of workloads currently in the list, and the number of workloads that are selected.
- 6 Continue with [Section 21.10.3, “Applying a Bulk Edit,” on page 170](#).

## 21.10.3 Applying a Bulk Edit

After your selection is ready, use the Bulk Edit dialog to specify values for one or more parameters in the selected workloads.

**To perform a bulk edit:**

- 1 After you select the workloads for action, click **Bulk Edit**.
- 2 Specify the information you want to change for the selected workloads. See [Section 21.10.1, “About Bulk Edit,” on page 166](#).

**The following fields apply to a single selected project:**

- ♦ Project
- ♦ Wave
- ♦ Batch
- ♦ Remove from Batch and Wave
- ♦ VLAN ID (network, from VLAN ID, to VLAN ID)
- ♦ Network resource (NIC, from Network, to Network)
- ♦ Host resource (from Host, to Host)
- ♦ Datastore resource (from Datastore, to Datastore)
- ♦ Migration Server resource (from Migration Server, to Migration Server)
- ♦ Replication Network (from Network, to Network)

**The following fields apply to all selected workloads:**

- ♦ Transformation Method
- ♦ Disk Copy Method
- ♦ Cloud Provider
- ♦ Applications
- ♦ Start Date
- ♦ Start Time

- ♦ Cutover Date
- ♦ Cutover Time
- ♦ On Hold
- ♦ Amount of Memory
- ♦ Custom field values (available only if the Global Project Selector is set or a single project is actively selected in the dialog)

3 Click **Apply**.

4 Review the confirmation message, then click **Proceed**.

Workloads placed in an On Hold status are dimmed in the Workloads list.

## 21.11 Bulk Status Change for Multiple Proposed Workloads

You can use the Bulk Status Change option on the Workloads tab to modify the state value for proposed workloads for multiple workloads at a time. Use the Filter and Advanced Search options to locate and select the workloads of interest. See [“Status and Retry” on page 147](#).

The Bulk Status Change dialog indicates the number of workloads selected and the number of projects you will affect with the Bulk Status Change. The change applies only to the selected items for which the next phase selected is a valid state change.

**To change the status of one or more workloads:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Select one or more workloads that you want to set to the same state.
- 3 Click **Bulk Status Change**.
- 4 Do one of the following actions for the selected workloads:
  - ♦ If the **Submit** option is available, one or more of the selected workloads is eligible to move to a phase of readiness for transformation. Click **Submit** to change the workload status to Ready for Transformation.
  - ♦ Specify the **Next Phase** you want to set for selected workloads, then click **Apply**.

## 21.12 Synchronizing Edits from the Migrate Server

In the PlateSpin Migration Factory environment, a Migration Specialist might make manual changes to the workload migration job on the Migrate server. Events are synchronized to Transformation Manager through the Migrate Connector if the change affects settings that Transformation Manager tracks.

Examples of workload settings that are synchronized include Number of Cores, Cores per Socket, Datastores, static IP for replication network, and so on. Because Transformation Manager does not have Blackout Window or Bandwidth Throttling settings, it does not synchronize changes for them. Also, source credentials set in Migrate are not synchronized.

The Migration Specialist might also initiate an action by clicking a command in Migrate. The state change is synchronized, and Transformation Manager displays the changed state.

## 21.13 Viewing the Transformation History

The Transformation History tracks the following:

- ♦ Workflow state changes
- ♦ Migration sub-state changes
- ♦ User-provided notes that capture events that occur outside the monitoring provided by Transformation Manager

On the Workload dialog, the Transformation History panel shows the 10 most recent events or user-provided notes. All events are available in the Transformation History log for the workload.

**To view the transformation history for a workload:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the **Filter** and **Advanced Search** options to locate the workload of interest.
- 3 Double-click the workload you want to modify to open its Workload dialog. You can alternatively select the workload, and then click **Edit**.
- 4 Scroll down to view the Transformation History panel to view the 10 most recent events and user-provided notes.
- 5 Click **View** to open the Transformation History log.
- 6 Scroll or use the Filter to locate the events of interest.  
You can mouse over a long user-provided note to view the full message in a tooltip.
- 7 Click **Close** to exit the Transformation History log.
- 8 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

## 21.14 Adding User Notes to the Transformation History

In the Transformation History, you can add user notes that capture events that occur outside the monitoring provided by Transformation Manager.

**To add user notes to the history:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the **Filter** and **Advanced Search** options to locate the workload of interest.
- 3 Double-click the workload you want to modify to open its Workload dialog. You can alternatively select the workload, and then click **Edit**.
- 4 Scroll down to view the Transformation History panel, then click **View**.
- 5 Under **Create Note**, type the comments you want to add to the log.  
The note length is not limited to the size of the note field. The words scroll to the left as you type.
- 6 Click **Add Note**.  
The new note is time-stamped and added to the Transformation History with the status of **User-provided note**. The first two lines of the note display in the Transformation History dialog. For notes longer than two lines, you can mouse over the note to view the full message in a tooltip.
- 7 Click **Close** to exit the Transformation History log.

The new note displays as an entry in the most recent events in the Transformation History. The first line of user-provided note displays in the Transformation History panel. For notes longer than one line, you can mouse over the note to view the full message in a tooltip.

- 8 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

## 21.15 Withdrawing a Submitted Workload

After you submit a workload for migration, you can withdraw it at any point in the migration. In Planning Mode, the state returns immediately to **Prepared, waiting**.

In Automated Mode, you have the option of removing the target VM and cleaning up the workload job from the Migrate server when you Withdraw. The behavior depends on where in the workflow the migration is at the time:

- ♦ If the migration is waiting to start, the state returns immediately to **Prepared, waiting**.
- ♦ If the migration has started, you have an option to automatically clean up the VM host and Migrate server:
  - ♦ If you opt to remove the target VM, the clean-up occurs before it the state returns to **Prepared, waiting**. The clean-up can take a while. You cannot modify the workload until the clean-up is done.
  - ♦ If you opt to not remove the target VM, the state returns immediately to **Prepared, waiting**. The workload job remains on the Migrate server and the target VM remains on the target host. You should manually clean up the target VM and Migrate server.

### To withdraw a workload:

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Use the **Filter** and **Advanced Search** options to locate the workload of interest.
- 3 Double-click the workload you want to modify to open its Workload dialog. You can alternatively select the workload, and then click **Edit**.
- 4 In the Workload dialog, click **Withdraw**.
- 5 If you are prompted for permission to remove the target VM, do one of the following:
  - ♦ Click **Yes** to initiate and automated clean up the target VM on the VM host and the workload job on the Migrate server.
  - ♦ Click **No** if you want to manually clean up the target VM on the VM host and the workload job on the Migrate server.

### To withdraw one or more workloads:

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Select one or more submitted workloads that you want to withdraw.
- 3 Click **Bulk Status Change**.
- 4 Click **Withdraw**.
- 5 If you are prompted for permission to remove the target VM, do one of the following:
  - ♦ Click **Yes** to initiate and automated clean up the target VM on the VM host and the workload job on the Migrate server for each of the selected workloads.
  - ♦ Click **No** if you want to manually clean up the target VM on the VM host and the workload job on the Migrate server for each of the selected workloads.

## 21.16 Deleting a Workload

The Delete option allows a user with Workload management permissions to delete the workload from the project. Deleting a licensed workload does not free the consumed license.

Before you execute a workload transformation or migration, you might want to delete a workload if the workload is no longer exists or is no longer a candidate for transformation or migration. For example, the workload is no longer available if the hardware fails or if you decommission the workload prior to the transformation project. The workload is no longer a candidate if you determine that some workloads will remain in the current facility.

However, if only the profile for the source workload has changed, you should re-import the source workload information instead of deleting it. You can use the same FQDN in the Bulk Import spreadsheet to re-import the source workload with the modified data. After you have edited a proposed workload, a re-import modifies only the source workload information. See [Section B.6, “Re-Importing Workloads,”](#) on page 188.

**To delete a workload from a project:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 In the **Workloads** list, use the Filter and Advanced Search to locate the appropriate workload.
- 3 Select the workload, then click **Delete**.
- 4 Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

# B Bulk Import Spreadsheet

---

**Users Who Can Perform This Task:** Project Manager, Project Architect, or any user in the Administrators group

---

A large-scale data center transformation or migration project can involve hundreds or thousands of workloads. Importing data from a spreadsheet allows you to leverage data you might already have in an asset database.

The information the you include in your spreadsheet depends on your import goals:

- ♦ **Planning Only:** PlateSpin Transformation Manager allows you to plan for a variety of transformation goals, migration tools, and environments. You can import or re-import data for workloads from the same or different spreadsheets to define the original workload.
- ♦ **Automated Discovery:** In a PlateSpin Discovery Environment, your import spreadsheet needs to include only the minimal access information for each workload and values for Credentials. The import begins an automated discovery to retrieve detailed information for each new workload. Before you import the spreadsheet, ensure that your setup meets the following requirements:
  - ♦ A PlateSpin Migrate Connector instance must be deployed and running in the network where the source workloads reside.
  - ♦ The Connector instances must be configured to work with your PTM Server.
  - ♦ The Connector instances must be available to your project.
  - ♦ The Connector supports automated discovery only for physical and virtual machines.

For each source workload, the import automatically creates an original workload object for your project. It also create an initial proposed workload based on those original settings.

This section describes the bulk import process, and how to prepare a specially formatted spreadsheet that contains data about the machines to import for a project.

- ♦ [Section B.1, “About Spreadsheet Import,” on page 176](#)
- ♦ [Section B.2, “Spreadsheet Parameters,” on page 178](#)
- ♦ [Section B.3, “Downloading a Sample Import Spreadsheet,” on page 187](#)
- ♦ [Section B.4, “Validating a Spreadsheet,” on page 187](#)
- ♦ [Section B.5, “Downloading the Results Spreadsheet,” on page 188](#)
- ♦ [Section B.6, “Re-Importing Workloads,” on page 188](#)

## B.1 About Spreadsheet Import

PlateSpin Transformation Manager supports the bulk import of multiple machines at a time to your transformation project. *Bulk import* refers to loading data about the machines from a specially formatted Microsoft Excel 97-2003 (.xls) spreadsheet file to a previously defined project.

For each newly imported machine, the import automatically configures its original workload and an initial proposed workload. The workloads are then available in the Web Interface for further association with the project resources, users, and schedules. After you edit a proposed workload by using the Workload dialog or the Bulk Edit options, any re-imported workload information applies only to the original workload.

The spreadsheet allows you to import a variety of data about each machine. PlateSpin Transformation Manager requires only the discovery IP address or FQDN (fully qualified domain name) and the type of machine (physical, virtual, or cloud). Predefined and custom parameters allow you to specify more details about the workloads, depending on your needs.

---

**NOTE:** If a PlateSpin Migrate Connector is available to the project, the successful import of workloads initiates an automated discovery process that retrieves details about the source workloads.

---

You use your own spreadsheet software to create the Bulk Import spreadsheet. You can leverage the data in your network inventory records by mapping and exporting data to one or more versions of the Bulk Import spreadsheet.

- ♦ [“Spreadsheet Import Tools” on page 176](#)
- ♦ [“Spreadsheet Import Workflow” on page 177](#)

### B.1.1 Spreadsheet Import Tools

The Spreadsheet Import function in the PlateSpin Transformation Manager Web Interface provides the following tools to help you validate the spreadsheet for import:

- ♦ **Validate:** The Validate tool checks the spreadsheet format to identify the types of data it contains, performs limited checks of values, and identifies errors.

Transformation Manager restricts what values are possible for some parameters, and expects text or numbers for others. It also checks for dependencies among the parameters to ensure all expected values are present. Otherwise, it accepts the values you input for the parameters. It does not validate the values for a machine against the actual machine in your network environment.

For re-imported machines, the Validate tool also check the current workflow state for the machine. It ignores rows for machines that have already been submitted for transformation. You can withdraw the machine from transformation to make it eligible again for re-import.

You can re-submit the spreadsheet iteratively until all rows of data are valid, and the spreadsheet is ready for import.

- ♦ **Validation Results:** The Validation Results reporting tool provides the Validation Status for each machine in the spreadsheet. For each invalid row, it identifies the type and location of errors. It also identifies which rows are ignored. You can view results for all rows, valid rows, invalid rows, and ignored rows.

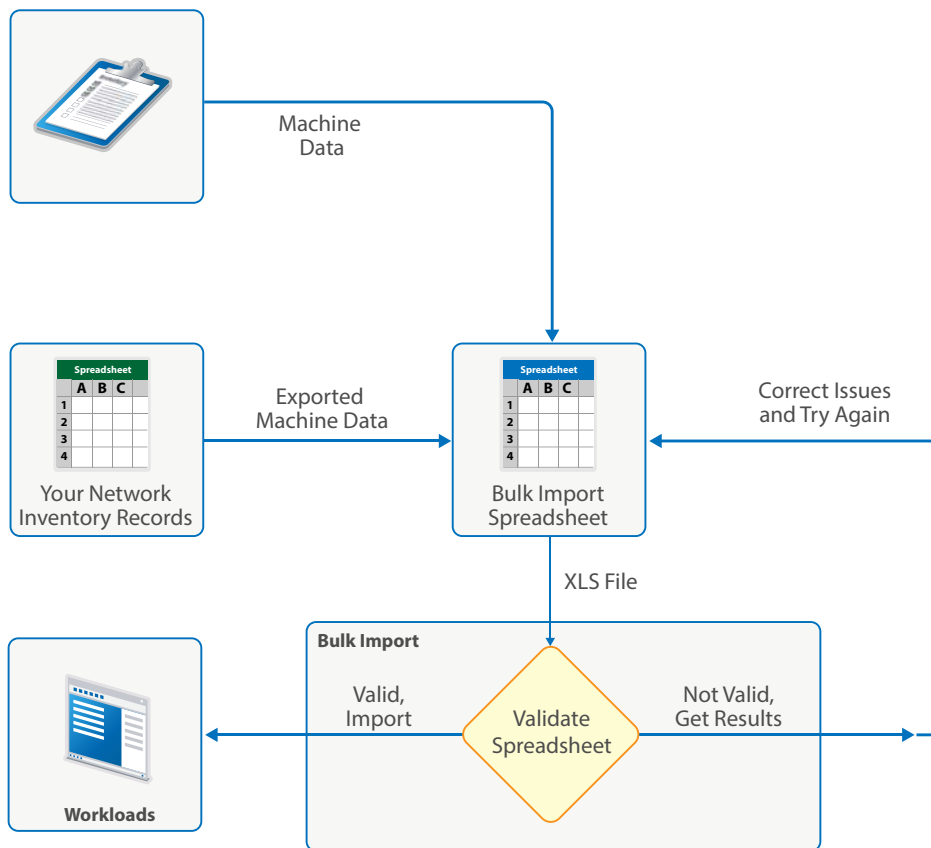


- ♦ **Get Results:** The Get Results tool allows you to download a Results spreadsheet in Microsoft Excel 97-2003 (.xls) format. In addition to the Validation Status for each machine, it adds the following information if the column is present:
  - ♦ Workload ID
  - ♦ NIC UUID
  - ♦ Disk UUID

## B.1.2 Spreadsheet Import Workflow

The Spreadsheet Import workflow, shown in [Figure B-1](#), includes the tasks you perform to prepare the data for import, as well as the tasks required to validate that data before you can import it to your PlateSpin Transformation Manager environment.

**Figure B-1** Spreadsheet Import Workflow



To import or update data for one or multiple machines in a project:

1. Collect data about the machines for a single transformation project in a spreadsheet, and save it in Microsoft Excel 97-2003 (.xls) format.  
A template for this specially formatted spreadsheet is available in the Spreadsheet Import dialog.
2. Open the Spreadsheet Import dialog.
3. Select the project, then browse and select the spreadsheet you prepared.
4. Validate the spreadsheet.
5. View the validation results by all rows, valid rows, invalid rows, or ignored rows.

6. If rows are invalid, download an annotated Results spreadsheet. PTM adds validation information that can help you to troubleshoot issues.
7. For each invalid row, correct the errors according to the various validation messages, then clear its Validation Status cell.
8. Repeat Step 2 to Step 7 iteratively until all rows are valid.
9. After all rows are valid, import the spreadsheet.  
For each machine with an empty Validation Status cell, PTM does the following:
  - a. Creates or updates the original workload and the proposed workload (if it is unedited) for the machine.
  - b. (Connector) If a PlateSpin Migrate Connector is enabled and active for the project, automated discovery retrieves additional information about each imported workload if you provide credentials in the spreadsheet. Discovery status is available in the Workloads list.
  - c. Generates the Results spreadsheet and includes the following information, as appropriate:
    - ♦ Machine data
    - ♦ Validation Status of **Imported**
    - ♦ Workload ID of the original workload
    - ♦ NIC UUID for each NIC instance
    - ♦ Disk UUID for each disk instance
10. (Optional) Before you close the Spreadsheet Import dialog, download the Results spreadsheet.
11. (Optional) Re-import data for a machine from the same or different Bulk Import spreadsheet. A re-import can add new data or modify previously submitted data.

## B.2 Spreadsheet Parameters

The Bulk Import spreadsheet contains the following information for one or more workloads in your transformation project:

- ♦ Required workload data
- ♦ Workload credentials
- ♦ Workload details
- ♦ Location
- ♦ Custom fields
- ♦ NICs
- ♦ Disks
- ♦ Applications

You can download a sample spreadsheet from the Spreadsheet Import dialog (**Planning > Workloads > Spreadsheet Import**) in the Web Interface. Mouse over the red triangle in a heading cell to display help about the purpose and format of the data in the column and whether it is required as part of the mapping process.

See the following tables for information about the expected values and format for each parameter in the Bulk Import spreadsheet:

- ♦ [Table B-1, “Required Workload Parameters,” on page 179](#)
- ♦ [Table B-2, “Workload Credentials Parameters,” on page 180](#)

- ♦ [Table B-3, “Workload Details Parameters,” on page 181](#)
- ♦ [Table B-4, “Location Parameters,” on page 182](#)
- ♦ [Table B-5, “Custom Field Parameters,” on page 184](#)
- ♦ [Table B-6, “NIC Parameters,” on page 185](#)
- ♦ [Table B-7, “Disk Parameters,” on page 186](#)
- ♦ [Table B-8, “Application Parameter,” on page 187](#)

## Required Workload Parameters

The spreadsheet requires only three columns to set up a workload: FQDN, Type, and Validation Status. See [Table B-1](#). This flexibility requires that you provide a header row with proper column names. These three columns must be present in all re-imports for the workloads. If you also include the Workload ID column, PTM automatically populates the IDs in the Results spreadsheet.

**NOTE:** If you prepare a spreadsheet without column headings, all defined columns must be present in the expected order indicated in the sample spreadsheet.

**Table B-1** Required Workload Parameters

Parameter	Required/Optional	Description
IP or FQDN	Required for all imports.	Specify the IP address or fully qualified domain name for the workload. This parameter might be used to discover and communicate with the workload. You can specify the host name only if you do not need discovery or validation.  Examples:  sqlserver5.paris.digitalair.com sqlserver5 192.168.1.1  A workload can have only one instance in a transformation project.
Validation Status	Required for all imports. Values are provided by PTM.	Transformation Manager writes the status for each workload to the Results spreadsheet after validation or after successful import. Clear the field for import.
Workload ID	Optional; recommended for all imports. Values are provided by PTM.	If this column is present, PTM writes the original workload's unique workload ID to the Results spreadsheet after a workload is successfully imported to a project.  Example: 1635326
Type	Required for all imports.	Specify the workload type.  Acceptable values are CLOUD, PHYSICAL, or VIRTUAL.

## Workload Credentials

If you use PlateSpin Migrate for workload migrations, you can specify the Credentials resource to use for communications with the Migrate server. If you also use PlateSpin Migrate Connector, PTM uses Credentials resources for workload discovery, host discovery, and migration execution. See [Table B-2](#).

---

**NOTE:** A valid Credentials resource is required for automated discovery. Ensure that you provide the Workload Credential Name of an existing, valid Credentials resource, or provide all three credentials fields to create a new one.

---

After you create a Credentials resource, you cannot modify the user name and password for it by modifying the value in the spreadsheet and re-importing the workload. Use the Edit Credential dialog in the Web Interface to modify the settings for the resource. See [“Editing a Credential” on page 198](#).

**Table B-2** Workload Credentials Parameters

Parameters	Required/Optional	Description
Workload Credential Name	Optional	<p>Specify a name for the credential that is unique within your project. If no matching value is found in the Credentials list, PTM creates a new Credentials resource. Names are case insensitive.</p> <p>If you specify a workload credential user name and password without providing a credential name, PTM uses the FQDN as the credential name.</p>
Workload Credential User Name	Optional (Required for a new Credentials resource)	<p>Specify the logon user name of a domain administrator or local administrator to use for communications with the workload.</p> <p>Provide the user name exactly as it is expected by the workload operating system and environment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ <b>Windows:</b> Case insensitive. Use local or domain administrator credentials. For example:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>♦ For domain member machines: CORPDOM\username</li><li>♦ For workgroup member machines: WORKGROUP\username</li><li>♦ For a local user account: username</li></ul></li><li>♦ <b>Linux:</b> Case sensitive. Use <code>root</code> or a root-level user name for the workload that has been properly configured to use <code>sudo</code>. See <a href="https://www.netiq.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7920711">KB Article 7920711 (https://www.netiq.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7920711)</a>.</li></ul>
Workload Credential Password	Optional (Required for a new Credentials resource)	<p>Specify the password of the specified user name. You can add or modify the password for the credential later from the Web Interface.</p> <p>The password is case sensitive. Passwords are stored securely and are not visible in the Web interface.</p>

## Workload Details

Workload details define the operating system and hardware for the source workload. These details are automatically populated for the target workload. You can later modify the details for the target workload by using the Workload dialog or the Bulk Edit action in the Web Interface. See [Table B-3](#).

You can create source resources for Hosts, Networks, and Datastores by including those columns in the spreadsheet. Include the Environment column to create a resource that can apply to a source workload or target workload.

---

**NOTE:** A source resource name must be unique among source resources of the same type. The Environment resource name must be unique among environment resources for the project.

The resource name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

---

**Table B-3** Workload Details Parameters

Parameters	Required/Optional	Description
Operating System	Optional	<p>Specify an operating system from the Operating Systems list configured in PTM. Names are case sensitive.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p>CentOS 6 Citrix XEN Server Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Solaris 11 SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 Windows Server 2003 (x32) Windows 2008 Windows Server 2012 R2 Windows Server 2016 VMware ESX</p> <p>PTM includes most operating system types and release versions in the default Operating Systems list. Contact your System Administrator to add custom operating system values to the list.</p>
Memory (MB)	Optional	<p>Specify the maximum memory available for the workload. Values default to MB if no unit is specified. Valid binary units are B, MB, GB, TB, PB, EB, ZB, and YB.</p> <p>Examples: 2 GB, 512, 8GB</p>
# of Processors	Optional	<p>Specify the number of processors installed on the workload for physical machines and non-VMware virtual machines. For VMware virtual machines, provide the number of sockets, or do not specify a value.</p> <p>Example: 2</p>

Parameters	Required/Optional	Description
# of Cores	Optional	Specify the number of cores per processor for physical machines and non-VMware virtual machines. For VMware virtual machines, provide the total number of cores.  Example: 8

## Location

Location information can describe the logical, virtual, physical locations of the workload. See [Table B-4](#).

**Table B-4** Location Parameters

Parameter	Required/Optional	Description
Environment	Optional	Specify the name of the Environment resource for this workload. Values are case sensitive. If no matching value is found, PTM creates a new Environment resource for the project.  Examples: staging, preproduction, and production  <b>NOTE:</b> The Environment resource name must be unique among environment resources for the project, but it can apply to multiple workloads.
Cloud Provider	Optional; recommended for Cloud workloads	Specify the cloud provider that will host a cloud workload.  Acceptable values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◆ Amazon Web Services</li><li>◆ Microsoft Azure</li><li>◆ Rackspace</li><li>◆ vCloud</li><li>◆ Google</li></ul>
Host	Optional	For a virtual workload, specify the name of the source Host resource for the source workload. Values are case sensitive. If no matching value is found, PTM creates a new source Host resource for the project.  Examples: mailhost, hyperv-cluster, esx2, citrix5.digitalair.com  <b>NOTE:</b> The source Host resource name must be unique among source Host resources for the project, but it can apply to multiple workloads.

Parameter	Required/Optional	Description
Hypervisor	Optional	<p>For a virtual workload, specify the hypervisor type running on its source Host resource. Names are case sensitive.</p> <p>Acceptable values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Citrix XenServer</li> <li>♦ Linux KVM</li> <li>♦ Microsoft Hyper-V</li> <li>♦ SUSE Xen</li> <li>♦ VMware</li> </ul>
VM Name	Optional	<p>For a virtual workload, specify the VM name known to its virtualization host server.</p> <p>Examples: vm-erm2, vm-msx-mailbox, vm-msx-web</p>
Site	Optional	<p>Specify the geographical or logical location of the host machine.</p> <p>Examples: Paris, Metro General Hospital, South Campus</p>
Hardware Type	Optional	<p>Specify the hardware for the workload's host machine (that is, the physical machine or a VM's virtualization host machine).</p> <p>Examples: Dell PowerEdge, Levono X, IBM BladeCenter</p>
Enclosure	Optional	<p>Specify the enclosure for the host machine.</p> <p>Examples: AA-21, C205-R5, IL6-C5-R3</p>
Enclosure Slot	Optional	<p>Specify the slot number in the specified enclosure.</p> <p>Examples: U19, B07</p>
Is Domain?	Optional	<p>(OS: Windows family) Boolean value must be either <code>TRUE</code> or <code>FALSE</code>.</p> <p>Specify <code>TRUE</code> if the Windows workload is a member of a domain.</p> <p>Specify <code>FALSE</code> if the Windows workload is a member of a workgroup.</p>
Domain/Workgroup Name	Optional	<p>Specify the name of the domain or workgroup for the Windows workload, as appropriate.</p> <p>Domain name examples: CORPDOM, PARIS, or paris.digitalair.com</p> <p>Workgroup name example: WORKGROUP</p>

## Custom Fields

The Spreadsheet Import expects the headings of the **Custom X** columns to match the custom field names you have previously defined for the project. Each project can have up to 7 user-defined fields that apply project-wide. See [Table B-5](#).

You can associate logical names and purpose with the custom fields for each project. For example, if you want to identify the workload with its day-to-day IT administrator, you might define a **Field 1** name of **Contact** for the project. In the spreadsheet, you use **Contact** instead of **Custom 1** as the column heading. Specify values for the field as appropriate for your project, such as a contact person's name, user name, or email address.

**Table B-5** Custom Field Parameters

Parameters	Required/Optional	Description
Custom 1	Optional	Specify the project's Field 1 name as the column heading. For each workload, specify the value based on the project's Field 1 definition.
Custom 2	Optional	Specify the project's Field 2 name as the column heading. For each workload, specify the value based on the project's Field 2 definition.
Custom 3	Optional	Specify the project's Field 3 name as the column heading. For each workload, specify the value based on the project's Field 3 definition.
Custom 4	Optional	Specify the project's Field 4 name as the column heading. For each workload, specify the value based on the project's Field 4 definition.
Custom 5	Optional	Specify the project's Field 5 name as the column heading. For each workload, specify the value based on the project's Field 5 definition.
Custom 6	Optional	Specify the project's Field 6 name as the column heading. For each workload, specify the value based on the project's Field 6 definition.
Custom 7	Optional	Specify the project's Field 7 name as the column heading. For each workload, specify the value based on the project's Field 7 definition.

## NICs

You can identify one or more NICs for a workload. You can specify any one of the available NIC input parameters to set up a NIC. See [Table B-6](#). If you also include the **NIC1 UUID** column, PTM automatically populates the UUIDs in the Results spreadsheet. You can set up multiple NICs by adding additional NIC# column instances.



**Table B-6** NIC Parameters

Parameters	Required/Optional	Description
NIC1 UUID	Optional; recommended for NIC. Values are provided by PTM.	<p>The UUID is a set of hexadecimal numbers that uniquely identify the NIC in the project. If this column is present, PTM writes a unique ID for each NIC to the Results spreadsheet after a workload is successfully imported to a project,</p> <p>On a re-import, PTM keeps the same ID, and replaces the NIC's configuration information for the original workload.</p> <p>Example: b916afef-ccfc-4501-aa4c-a4658cd9845d</p>
NIC1 Interface Name	Optional	<p>Specify a unique interface name on the workload.</p> <p>Examples: eth0, eth1</p>
NIC1 IP DHCP	Optional	<p>Specify whether a DHCP server provides IP addresses for the NIC.</p> <p>Boolean value must be either <code>TRUE</code> or <code>FALSE</code>.</p>
NIC1 IP Address	Optional	<p>Specify an address for the NIC in IPv4 format.</p> <p>Example: 10.10.10.40</p>
NIC1 MAC	Optional	<p>Specify the MAC address for the source workload NIC in the MM:MM:MM:SS:SS:SS format.</p> <p>Example: 01:23:45:67:89:ab</p>
NIC1 Network Name	Optional	<p>Specify the name of the source Network resource for the source workload. Values are case sensitive. If no match is found, PTM creates a new source Network resource for the project.</p> <p>Examples: OrgNet-DMZ, OrgNet-Isolated, Azure-VNet-01, VMnet-08</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The source Network resource name must be unique among source Network resources for the project, but it can apply to multiple NICs on the same or different workloads.</p>
NIC1 VLAN ID	Optional	<p>Specify the assigned VLAN ID for this NIC. Providing the ID makes the validation and import functions run faster.</p> <p>Valid values are 1 to 4094.</p>
NIC1 Network Mask	Optional	<p>Specify the network mask in IPv4 format.</p> <p>Example: 255.255.252.0</p>
NIC1 Gateway	Optional	<p>Specify the default gateway address in IPv4 format. Multiple entries are not supported.</p>
NIC1 DNS DHCP	Optional	<p>Specify whether DNS DHCP is available for the NIC.</p> <p>Boolean value must be either <code>TRUE</code> or <code>FALSE</code>.</p>
NIC1 DNS Servers	Optional	<p>Specify one or more addresses in IPv4 format. For multiple entries, place each value on a separate line.</p>
NIC1 Search Domains	Optional	<p>Specify one or more search domains. For multiple entries, place each value on a separate line.</p>

Parameters	Required/Optional	Description
<b>Create additional NIC# sections as appropriate, then continue to the next component section.</b>		
A workload can have multiple network cards, each of which has a unique network configuration. The first defined network card is designated as NIC1, the second as NIC2, and so on.		

## Disks

You can identify one or more disks for a workload. See [Table B-7](#). A disk requires only the **Disk1 Vol Type** and **Disk1 Size** columns. If you also include the **Disk1 UUID** column, PTM automatically populates the UUIDs in the Results spreadsheet. You can set up multiple disks by adding additional **Disk#** column instances with the minimum of **Disk# Vol Type** and **Disk# Size** columns.

**Table B-7** Disk Parameters

Parameters	Required/Optional	Description
Disk1 UUID	Optional; recommended for Disks. Values are provided by PTM.	<p>The UUID is a set of hexadecimal numbers that uniquely identify the disk in the project. If this column is present, PTM writes a unique ID for each disk to the Results spreadsheet after a workload is successfully imported to a project.</p> <p>On a re-import, PTM keeps the same ID, and replaces the disk's configuration information for the original workload.</p> <p>Example: 866b4209-4779-48f8-a81d-e8aa04c63d55</p>
Disk1 Datastore Name	Optional, applies to Virtual workloads	<p>Specify the name of the source Datastore resource that contains the disk. Values are case sensitive. If no matching value is found, PTM creates a new source Datastore resource for the project.</p> <p>Example: san-dc-east</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The datastore name must be unique among source Datastore resources for the project. A datastore can apply to multiple disks on the same virtual workload or on different virtual workloads.</p>
Disk1 Vol Name	Optional	Specify the unique volume name on the workload.
Disk1 Vol Type	Optional; required for Disk	Acceptable values are <code>System</code> , <code>Local</code> , <code>NAS</code> , or <code>SAN</code> .
Disk1 Mount Point	Optional	Specify the path from the root of the volume.
Disk1 Remote Path	Optional	<p>(Volume Type: <code>SAN</code> or <code>NAS</code>) Specify the remote path for the volume.</p> <p>Example: <code>\\vol1\mnt</code></p>
Disk1 Size	Optional; required for Disk	<p>Specify the total size of the disk. Values default to MB if no unit is specified. Valid binary units are B, MB, GB, TB, PB, EB, ZB, and YB.</p> <p>Examples: <code>2TB</code>, <code>500 GB</code>, <code>102400</code></p>

Parameters	Required/Optional	Description
Disk1 Used	Optional	Specify the space used on the disk. Values default to MB if no unit is specified. Valid binary units are B, MB, GB, TB, PB, EB, ZB, and YB.  Examples: 1.22TB, 162 GB, 51200

**Create additional Disk# sections as appropriate, then continue to the next component section.**

A workload can have multiple disks, each of which has its own configuration. The first defined disk is designated as `Disk1`, the second as `Disk2`, and so on.

## Applications

You can identify one or more applications for a workload. See [Table B-8](#). Add an **Application#** column instance for each application you want to track for the workload.

**Table B-8** Application Parameter

Parameter	Required	Description
Application1 Name	Optional	Only the name of the application is needed. The application must be available to the workload. Values are case sensitive. If no matching value is found, PTM creates a new Application resource for the project.  Example: Paris-Project2-Exchange  <b>NOTE:</b> An Application name must be unique among Applications for the project, but it can apply to multiple workloads.

**Create additional Application# sections as appropriate.**

A workload can have multiple applications or services associated with it. The first defined application is designated with a column heading of `Application1 Name`, the second column heading as `Application2 Name`, and so on.

## B.3 Downloading a Sample Import Spreadsheet

To download a sample spreadsheet:

- 1 Log in to the Web Interface as the Project Manager user, or as any system user.
- 2 Select **Planning > Workloads > Spreadsheet Import** to open the Spreadsheet Import dialog.
- 3 Click **Get sample spreadsheet**, then save the file to your local machine.

The spreadsheet is in `.xls` file format.

## B.4 Validating a Spreadsheet

Before you submit the Bulk Import spreadsheet, clear the contents in the Validation Status cell for each machine that you want to validate for import (or re-import).

The Validate tool displays the following states for machines and adds the information to the Validation Status column of the Results spreadsheet:

- ♦ **Ready for Import:** The row contains valid information.  
  
The Validate tool found no errors in the data submitted for the machine. All values are valid options and in the expected format. All required and dependent values are present.
- ♦ **Invalid:** The row contains invalid information.  
  
The Validate tool found one or more errors in the data submitted for this machine. The cell also includes messages about the type and location of the errors.
- ♦ **Imported:** The row was successfully imported or re-imported.  
  
On import, PTM creates (or modifies) the original and proposed workloads for this machine in the specified project. If you have edited the proposed workload by using the Web Interface, a re-import modifies data only for the original workload.
- ♦ **Ignored:** The row was previously imported for a workload that has already been submitted for transformation.  
  
You can use the Workload dialog to withdraw the machine from transformation to make it eligible again for re-import.

## B.5 Downloading the Results Spreadsheet

After you perform a validation or an import of the Bulk Import spreadsheet, the **Get Results** option becomes available on the Spreadsheet Import dialog.

- 1 On the Spreadsheet Import dialog, click **Get Results**, then save the file to your local machine.  
The spreadsheet is in `.xls` file format.

After a validation, the Results spreadsheet reports the import readiness of each workload.

After a successful import, the Results spreadsheet contains the exact results of the current state of the import process, including:

- ♦ The deletion of blank rows
- ♦ More verbose results of the validation status
- ♦ The Workload ID assigned to each workload (if the **Workload ID** column is present in the input Bulk Import spreadsheet)
- ♦ The UUID assigned to each NIC (if the **NIC# UUID** column is present in the input Bulk Import spreadsheet)
- ♦ The UUID assigned to each disk (if the **Disk# UUID** column is present in the input Bulk Import spreadsheet)

## B.6 Re-Importing Workloads

You can re-import workloads multiple times to separately set up the various categories of data. This partial import capability allows you to import a workload's full details from multiple sources, each with its own import spreadsheet. Each re-import adds details for the original workload and for the proposed workload.

For example, you can import the minimal data to create the workload. Subsequent re-imports can use separate spreadsheets to add workload details, location, NICs, disks, applications, and custom fields. Alternatively, you can continue to work in the same spreadsheet, adding the appropriate columns for each re-import at the end of the spreadsheet.

---

**NOTE:** After you edit the proposed workload by using the Web Interface, the proposed workload is no longer updated by any subsequent re-imports.

---

If you attempt to re-import a workload that is in a workflow state of Submitted or a later phase, then the Validation Status returns a message:

`Cannot re-import workload after transformation has been submitted.`

The import ignores workloads in the Submitted or later state, and continues unless there are invalid rows. Rows that are in the ignored state appear in the Ignored Rows tab of the Validation Results.



# VI

## Resources

PlateSpin Transformation Manager allows you to define the resources to track for workload transformations. Resources include credentials, hosts, networks, datastores, environments, migration servers, and resource pools.

- ♦ [Chapter 22, “Overview of Resources,” on page 193](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 23, “Managing Credentials Resources,” on page 195](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 24, “Managing Host Resources,” on page 201](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 25, “Managing Migration Server Resources,” on page 209](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 26, “Managing Network Resources,” on page 213](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 27, “Managing Datastore Resources,” on page 217](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 28, “Managing Resource Pool Resources,” on page 221](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 29, “Managing Environment Resources,” on page 225](#)





# 22 Overview of Resources

PlateSpin Transformation Manager allows you to define the resources to track for workload transformations. Resources include credentials, hosts, networks, datastores, environments, migration servers, and resource pools.

- ♦ [Section 22.1, “About Resources,” on page 193](#)
- ♦ [Section 22.2, “Prerequisites for Resources,” on page 193](#)

## 22.1 About Resources

Resources are elements of your IT infrastructure that are external to the workloads to be transformed. These resources represent the operational and replication environment for the workload. Resource types include:

- ♦ Credentials
- ♦ Hosts
- ♦ Migration servers
- ♦ Networks
- ♦ Datastores
- ♦ Resource pools
- ♦ Environments

You can use the Resources feature to create, manage, and delete information about resources for your project. In a Spreadsheet Import, the values for host, network, and datastore create source resources, and values for credentials and environments apply for both sources and targets.

## 22.2 Prerequisites for Resources

When you create a resource, you must associate it with a specific transformation project. Before you can add resources for a project, you must create the parent organization and project to ensure that they are available when you create the resources for a project.



# 23 Managing Credentials Resources

Credentials resources allow you to track the authentication credentials that are needed to log in as an administrator user to the related location:

- ♦ Workloads
- ♦ Target hosts
- ♦ Migration servers

You can use the Credentials page to create, manage, view, and delete the Credentials resources for the target workloads in your transformation project. Credentials do not apply to source workloads.

- ♦ [Section 23.1, “About Credentials Resources,” on page 195](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.2, “Viewing Credentials,” on page 196](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.3, “Creating a Credential,” on page 196](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.4, “Associating Credentials with Workloads, Hosts, or Migration Servers,” on page 197](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.5, “Editing a Credential,” on page 198](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.6, “Deleting a Credential,” on page 198](#)

## 23.1 About Credentials Resources

The Credentials resource allows you to track the following information for authentication credentials:

**Name:** Specify a name for the Credentials resource that is unique to your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** Select the parent organization for the project.

**Project:** Select the parent project for the credential.

**Description:** (Optional) Specify a brief description of the credential. This text appears by default in the Credentials list.

**Username:** Specify the logon user name of a domain administrator or local administrator to use for communications with the workload.

Provide the user name exactly as it is expected by the intended workload operating system or authentication system:

- ♦ **Windows:** Case insensitive. Use local or domain administrator credentials. For example:
  - ♦ For domain member machines: `CORPDOM\username`
  - ♦ For workgroup member machines: `WORKGROUP\username`
  - ♦ For a local user account: `username`

- ♦ **Linux:** Case sensitive. Use `root` or a root-level user name for the workload that has been properly configured to use `sudo`. See [KB Article 7920711](https://www.netiq.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7920711) (<https://www.netiq.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7920711>).

**Password:** Specify the password for the user name.

**Confirm Password:** Re-type the password.

Credentials resources facilitate authentication for the associated components. The passwords are stored securely in the PlateSpin Transformation Manager database. Passwords are obscured in the interface.

---

**NOTE:** Credentials resource settings are not integrated with your directory password management system. If the password changes in your network environment or for accounts in cloud provider locations, you must manually update the password stored for the resource.

---

## 23.2 Viewing Credentials

All roles for a project can view the Credentials resource information. The password for the user name is always obscured.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**, then select the **Credentials** tab.  
You can also view Credentials resources for a single project in the **Associations** area of the Edit Project dialog. Select **Planning > Projects**, double-click the project. In the Edit Project dialog under **Associations**, select the **Resources** tab, then select **Credentials**.
- 2 On the **Credentials** tab, view the list of resources.
- 3 Select a Credentials resource, then click **View** (or double-click the resource) to view the following settings for the resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
  - ♦ Username
  - ♦ Password
  - ♦ Confirm Password
- 4 (Optional) Filter entries in the Credentials list using the **Search** field to show only the resource pools of interest. Type a sequence of characters in the **Search** area to initiate filtering. The filter applies as you type. You can filter on information in any one of the columns at a time.
- 5 (Optional) Sort entries by the values in a column. Mouse over the column to expose the menu option, click it, then select **Sort Ascending** or **Sort Descending**.

## 23.3 Creating a Credential

You can use the Credentials page to create Credentials resources for the target transformation environment of a project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Credentials** tab.

- 3 Click **Create** to open the Create Credential dialog.
- 4 Specify the following information for the Credentials resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
  - ♦ Username
  - ♦ Password
  - ♦ Confirm Password
- 5 Click **Save** to create the Credentials resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 23.4 Associating Credentials with Workloads, Hosts, or Migration Servers

After you create Credentials resources for a project, you can associate them with workloads, hosts, or migration servers, as appropriate.

- ♦ [“Associating Credentials and Workloads” on page 197](#)
- ♦ [“Associating Credentials and Hosts” on page 197](#)
- ♦ [“Associating Credentials and Migration Servers” on page 198](#)

### 23.4.1 Associating Credentials and Workloads

After you create Credentials resources for a project, you can associate them with workloads.

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 In the **Workloads** list, use the Filter and Advanced Search to locate the appropriate workload.
- 3 Select the workload, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the workload of interest.
- 4 On the Workload dialog, scroll to the **Workload** panel, then click **Edit**.
- 5 From the **Admin Credentials** list, select the Credentials resource that you want to assign to the target workload.
- 6 (Windows workloads) In a Domain, select **Domain** under **Windows Settings**, specify the domain name, then select the Credentials resource to use for the domain in the **Domain Credential** list.
- 7 (Optional) Modify other Workload information as appropriate.
- 8 Click **Save**, then click **Close**.
- 9 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

### 23.4.2 Associating Credentials and Hosts

After you create Credentials resources for a project, you can associate them with host resources.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Hosts** tab.
- 3 Select the host, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the host of interest.

- 4 From the **Credential** list, select the Credentials resource that you want to assign to the target host.
- 5 (Optional) Modify other Host information as appropriate.
- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

### 23.4.3 Associating Credentials and Migration Servers

After you create Credentials resources for a project, you can associate them with migration servers.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Migration Servers** tab.
- 3 Select the migration server, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the migration server of interest.
- 4 From the **Credential** list, select the Credentials resource that you want to assign to the target migration server.
- 5 (Optional) Modify other Migration Server information as appropriate.
- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 23.5 Editing a Credential

You can use the Credentials page to edit a Credentials resource for the target transformation environment of a project. For example, you might need to modify the user name and password assigned to the credential, or change the password for the existing user name.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Credentials** tab.
- 3 In the **Credentials** list, select the credential, then click **Edit** (or double-click the credential) to open the Edit Credential dialog.
- 4 Modify any of the following information for the Credentials resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
  - ♦ Username
  - ♦ Password
  - ♦ Confirm Password
- 5 Click **Save** to update the Credentials resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 23.6 Deleting a Credential

You can use the Credentials page to delete a Credentials resource for the target transformation environment of a project.

---

**NOTE:** If you delete a resource, it automatically removes the associations for the resource, including those assigned to workloads that are in progress and completed. If the same associations apply, consider whether it is more appropriate to edit the resource name and its user name and password.

---

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Credentials** tab.
- 3 View the list of Credentials resources.
- 4 Select the appropriate credential, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
- 5 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.





# 24 Managing Host Resources

Host resources allow you to track information about the host machines for the workload VMs. You can use the Hosts page to create, edit, view, and delete host resources for the target workloads in your transformation project. You can define host resources for the source workloads when you import machine their machine data. A host resource can be used for source workloads or for target workloads, but not to both. A host resource for a physical machine can be assigned to only a single workload.

- ♦ [Section 24.1, “About Automated Host Discovery,” on page 201](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.2, “About Host Resources,” on page 203](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.3, “Viewing Hosts,” on page 204](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.4, “Creating Source Hosts,” on page 204](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.5, “Creating a Target Host,” on page 204](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.6, “Retrying Host Discovery,” on page 205](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.7, “Rediscovering Hosts,” on page 206](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.8, “Editing Target Hosts,” on page 206](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.9, “Associating Hosts and Target Workloads,” on page 207](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.10, “Deleting a Host,” on page 207](#)

## 24.1 About Automated Host Discovery

If a PlateSpin Migrate Connector is available to the project, PlateSpin Transformation Manager provides automated discovery for target VMware Cluster hosts. Discovery retrieves details about the host, including its networks, datastores, and resource pools. If the networks, datastores, and resource pools do not match existing resources, it creates resources for them. You can also rediscover details for a host if necessary.

- ♦ [Section 24.1.1, “Discovery Requirements for Target Hosts,” on page 201](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.1.2, “Discovery Process for Hosts,” on page 202](#)
- ♦ [Section 24.1.3, “Troubleshooting Host Discovery Failures,” on page 202](#)

### 24.1.1 Discovery Requirements for Target Hosts

Before you attempt discovery for a VMware Cluster host, you must configure your PlateSpin Discovery Environment:

- ♦ **PlateSpin Transformation Manager 1.1 SP1**

Configure PlateSpin Transformation Manager and set up a project for the target hosts you want to discover.

- ♦ **PlateSpin Migrate Connector 1.1 SP1**

A PlateSpin Migrate Connector must be available to the project. For deployment information, see [“Deployment Requirements”](#) in the *PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start*.

PlateSpin Transformation Manager Appliance includes a Migrate Connector instance that is pre-configured to work with the PTM Server. You can also deploy Migrate Connector instances separately on your own SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 SP4 servers. See the [PlateSpin Migrate Connector Quick Start](#).

---

**NOTE:** Ensure that the Migrate Connector is up and running before you attempt discovery or rediscovery of target hosts.

---

- ♦ **Target Hosts**

- ♦ The Connector supports automated discovery of VMware Cluster Hosts.  
For other target host types, you can use the Spreadsheet Import method to add host details.
- ♦ Ensure that the target VMware Cluster hosts are up and running.
- ♦ Ensure that the network connections are working between the PlateSpin Migrate Connector and the target VMware Cluster host.

- ♦ **Credentials**

Create a Credentials resource to use for host discovery that provides the administrator-level credentials needed to access the target VMware host. The Credentials resource is also used later for automated migration setup of the target VM on the host.

- ♦ **Network Connectivity and Access for Target Hosts**

For information about network connectivity and access requirements for target host discovery, see [“Workload Discovery” on page 36](#).

## 24.1.2 Discovery Process for Hosts

The automated host discovery process performs the following actions:

1. The Create Host dialog creates a new Host object unless it matches an existing host.
2. Auto-discovery begins for the host, using the provided Credentials resources to log in to the host.
3. If discovery details for the host include networks, datastores, or resource pools, PTM creates new resources for each one in the project unless they match an existing resource.
4. On successful host discovery, the Hosts list or Edit Host dialog displays the host information.

## 24.1.3 Troubleshooting Host Discovery Failures

Discovery fails for any of the following conditions:

- ♦ A Migrate Connector is not available.
- ♦ The target host is not supported for automated discovery.
- ♦ The Credentials resource is not provided.
- ♦ The Credentials resource has an invalid value for the user name and password.
- ♦ The host is not running at the time of discovery.

After you resolve Migrate Connector, network, or credentials issues, you can retry discovery for supported hosts. See [Section 20.6, “Retrying Workload Discovery,” on page 143](#).

## 24.2 About Host Resources

The host resource allows you to track the following information for a server that hosts one physical workload, or that hosts the hypervisor for multiple virtual workloads:

**Status:** The discovery status for the target VM host. Discovery is available only when a PlateSpin Migrate Connector is available to the project and the target VM host is a VMware Cluster.

**Name:** Specify a name for the server that is unique to your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** Select the parent organization for the project.

**Project:** Select the parent project for the virtualization host.

**Description:** (Optional) Specify a brief description of the host. This text appears by default in the Hosts list.

**IP/DNS Name:** (Optional, required for discovery and automated migration) Specify an IP address in IPv4 format, or the DNS name of the host machine in the FQDN format.

**Credential:** (Optional, required for discovery and automated migration) Expand the Credentials list, then locate and select the Credentials resource to use for accessing the host machine. You can scroll the list, or type a sequence of characters in the Filter to locate the credentials of interest.

**Hypervisor:** Select the hypervisor type used by the host. Options include:

Citrix XenServer  
Linux KVM  
Microsoft Hyper-V  
None (for physical workloads)  
SUSE Xen  
VMware

**Cluster:** (Optional) The name of the vSphere Cluster.

**Hardware:** (Optional) Specify a textual description of the hardware architecture for the host server. If a match is not found, PTM adds a new Hardware type in the database. Options include: x32, x64.

**Site:** (Optional) Specify a textual description of the facility or location where the host server resides. If a match is not found, PTM adds a new Site type in the database. Examples: HQ data center, West campus, Sydney.

**Enclosure:** (Optional) Specify a textual description of the enclosure where the host server resides, such as the rack cabinet, blade server chassis, or tower cabinet. If a match is not found, PTM adds a new Enclosure type in the database. Examples: RC-10, BS-2, TC-5.

**Slot:** (Optional) Specify a textual description of the slot where the host server resides in the specified enclosure. If a match is not found, PTM adds a new Slot type in the database. Examples: R3-2U, Bay-2, Sh-1.

## 24.3 Viewing Hosts

You can view the host information for transformation workloads that you manage. For information about the parameters used to define the Host, see [Section 24.2, “About Host Resources,” on page 203](#).

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Resources** in the toolbar, then select the **Hosts** tab.  
You can also view hosts for a single project in the **Associations** area of the Edit Project dialog. Select **Planning** > **Projects**, double-click the project, then under **Associations**, select the **Hosts** tab.
- 2 On the **Hosts** tab, do either of the following to view a list of resources:
  - ♦ Click the **Source** link to view host information that you imported for original workloads using Spreadsheet Import.
  - ♦ Click the **Target** link to view host information for the target transformation environment.
- 3 Select a host resource, then click **View** (or double-click the resource) to view the following settings for the resource:
  - ♦ Status
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
  - ♦ IP/DNS Name
  - ♦ Credential
  - ♦ Hypervisor
  - ♦ Cluster
  - ♦ Hardware
  - ♦ Site
  - ♦ Enclosure
  - ♦ Slot
- 4 (Optional) Filter entries in the Hosts list using the Search field to show only the hosts of interest.  
Type a sequence of characters in the **Search** area to initiate filtering. The filter applies as you type. You can filter on information in any one of the columns at a time.
- 5 (Optional) Sort entries by the values in a column. Mouse over the column to expose the menu option, click it, then select **Sort Ascending** or **Sort Descending**.

## 24.4 Creating Source Hosts

You can create a host resource for a source workload by specifying the host information with the machine definition in the Bulk Import spreadsheet.

## 24.5 Creating a Target Host

You can use the Hosts page to create host resources for the target transformation environment of a project.

---

**NOTE:** If a PlateSpin Migrate Connector is available to the project and the target VM host is a VMware Cluster, auto-discovery creates related Network, Datastore, and Resource Pool resources if they do not already exist.

---

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Hosts** tab, then click **Target**.
- 3 Click **Create** to open the Create Host dialog.
- 4 Specify the following information for the host resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
  - ♦ IP/DNS Name (required for discovery and automated migration)
  - ♦ Credential (required for discovery and automated migration)
  - ♦ Hypervisor
  - ♦ Cluster
  - ♦ Hardware
  - ♦ Site
  - ♦ Enclosure
  - ♦ Slot
- 5 Click **Save** to create the host resource.

If auto-discovery is available, the host's Network, Datastore, and Resource Pool resources are automatically created.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.
- 7 (Optional) Visit the Network, Datastore, and Resource Pool tabs to visually verify information about the newly discovered resources.

## 24.6 Retrying Host Discovery

You might want to retry discovery for a host if the initial discovery fails. For information about possible causes of discovery failure, see [“Troubleshooting Host Discovery Failures” on page 202](#).

### To retry discovery for one or more hosts:

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Resources** in the toolbar, then select the **Hosts** tab.
- 2 Use the Advanced Search to select one or more hosts where the initial discovery failed. In the **Sub Status** list, select **Target host discovery failed**.
- 3 Click in the Hosts list to exit the Advanced Search.
- 4 For each host, mouse over the **Target host discovery failed** status to view details about the reason the discovery failed.
- 5 Select one or multiple hosts in the refined list.
- 6 In the actions above the list, click **Retry** to initiate discovery for each of the selected hosts.

**To retry discovery for a single host:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Resources** in the toolbar, then select the **Hosts** tab.
- 2 Use the Filter and Advanced Search to locate and select the host, then click **Edit**.
- 3 Mouse over **Retry** in the header area for information about why the initial discovery failed.
- 4 Click **Retry** to initiate discovery.

## 24.7 Rediscovering Hosts

You might want to rediscover a host if you modify the host platform, modify the network, add or remove datastores, or add or remove resource pools. Rediscovery automatically adds any new Network, Datastore, or Resource Pool resources; however, it does not remove the old resources.

**To rediscover one or more hosts:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select to **Resources > Hosts**.
- 2 Select one or multiple hosts in the Hosts list.
- 3 In the actions above the list, click **Rediscover** to initiate rediscovery for each of the selected hosts.

**To rediscover a single host:**

- 1 In the Web Interface, select to **Resources > Hosts**.
- 2 In the Hosts lists, select the host, then click **Edit**.
- 3 In the header area, note the Sub Status **Discovered**.
- 4 Click **Rediscover** to initiate rediscovery.

## 24.8 Editing Target Hosts

You can use the Hosts page to edit a host resource for the target transformation environment of a project. For information about the parameters used to define the Host, see [Section 24.2, “About Host Resources,” on page 203](#).

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Hosts** tab, then click **Target**.
- 3 In the **Hosts** list, select the host, then click **Edit** (or double-click the host) to open the Edit Host dialog.
- 4 Modify any information for the host resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
  - ♦ IP/DNS Name (required for discovery and automated migration)
  - ♦ Credential (required for discovery and automated migration)
  - ♦ Hypervisor
  - ♦ Cluster
  - ♦ Hardware

- ♦ Site
  - ♦ Enclosure
  - ♦ Slot
- 5 Click **Save** to update the host resource.
  - 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 24.9 Associating Hosts and Target Workloads

After you create target host resources for a project, you can associate them with workloads. For information about the parameters used to define the Host, see [Section 24.2, “About Host Resources,” on page 203](#).

- 1 In the Web Interface, select **Planning** in the toolbar, then select the **Workloads** tab.
- 2 Select the workload that will be transformed to a virtual workload, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the workload of interest.
- 3 Verify that the transformation target workload is a virtual machine.
  - 3a On the Workload dialog in the Transformation Plan panel, click **Edit**.
  - 3b In the Transformation Method list, select the appropriate method.
  - 3c Click **Save**, and then click **Close**.
- 4 On the Workload dialog in the **Location** panel, click **Edit**.
- 5 From the **Host** list, select the host resource that you want to assign to the target workload.
- 6 (Optional) Modify other Location information as appropriate.
- 7 Click **Save**, and then click **Close**.
- 8 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

## 24.10 Deleting a Host

You can use the Hosts page to delete a host resource for the source or target transformation environment of a project. The deleted resource is automatically removed from each of its assigned workloads.

---

**NOTE:** If you delete a resource, it automatically removes the associations for the resource, including those assigned to workloads that are in progress and completed. If the same associations apply, consider whether it is more appropriate to edit the resource name and settings.

---

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Hosts** tab.
- 3 (Optional) Delete a source host resource:
  - 3a On the **Hosts** tab, click **Source** to view the list of Source host resources.
  - 3b Select the appropriate host, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
- 4 (Optional) Delete a target host resource:
  - 4a On the **Hosts** tab, click **Target** to view the list of Target host resources.
  - 4b Select the appropriate host, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.





# 25 Managing Migration Server Resources

Migration Server resources allow you to track and associate the servers that host the migration tools used by migration specialists to transform workloads. For example, a migration server might host [PlateSpin Migrate](https://www.microfocus.com/products/platespin/migrate/) (<https://www.microfocus.com/products/platespin/migrate/>). You can use the Migration Servers page to create, manage, and delete the Migration Server resources for the target workloads in your transformation project. Migration Server resources do not apply to source workloads.

- ♦ [Section 25.1, “About Migration Server Resources,” on page 209](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.2, “Viewing Migration Server Resources,” on page 210](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.3, “Creating a Migration Server Resource,” on page 210](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.4, “Associating Migration Servers and Target Workloads,” on page 211](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.5, “Editing a Migration Server Resource,” on page 211](#)
- ♦ [Section 25.6, “Deleting a Migration Server,” on page 212](#)

## 25.1 About Migration Server Resources

The Migration Server resource allows you to track the following information for a migration server that resides in your transformation project:

**Name:** Specify a name for the migration server that is unique to your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** Select the parent organization for the project.

**Project:** Select the parent project for the migration server.

**Description:** (Optional) Specify a brief description of the migration server. This text appears by default in the Migration Servers list.

**Migration Server Type:** Select one of the following:

- ♦ **PlateSpin Migrate:** Select this option to identify the migration server as a PlateSpin Migrate Server, and to allow integration with your PlateSpin Migrate Server.
- ♦ **Others:** Select this option to identify that the migration server runs any other type of migration software. PTM does not provide integration.

**Server URL:** Specify the URL of the login page for the migration tool hosted on the migration server. The URL must conform to all syntax rules and can be up to 1024 characters. For example:

`https://psmigrate.example.com/Migrate`

**Credential:** Expand the Credentials list, then locate and select the Credentials resource to use to log in to the migration server's web-based management tool. You can scroll the list, or type a sequence of characters in the Filter to locate the Credentials resource of interest.

Migration Server resources can be saved in an incomplete state. The Migration Server field displays the value **Not Configured** in the Workload dialog. When you later deploy the server, you can update the Migration Server resource. The status is updated automatically for all of its associated workloads.

## 25.2 Viewing Migration Server Resources

All roles for a project can view the migration server information.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**, then select the **Migration Servers** tab.  
You can also view migration servers for a single project in the **Associations** area of the Edit Project dialog. Select **Planning > Projects**, double-click the project. In the Edit Project dialog under **Associations**, select the **Resources** tab, then select **Migration Servers**.
- 2 On the **Migration Servers** tab, view the list of resources.
- 3 Select a migration server resource, then click **View** (or double-click the resource) to view the following settings for the resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
  - ♦ Migration Server Type
  - ♦ Server URL
  - ♦ Credential
- 4 (Optional) Select the project in the **Global Project Selector** to list only the Migration Server resources for a single project.
- 5 (Optional) Filter entries in the Migration Servers list using the **Search** field to show only the migration servers of interest. Type a sequence of characters in the **Search** area to initiate filtering. The filter applies as you type. You can filter on information in any one of the columns at a time.
- 6 (Optional) Sort entries by the values in a column. Mouse over the column to expose the menu option, click it, then select **Sort Ascending** or **Sort Descending**.

## 25.3 Creating a Migration Server Resource

You can use the Migration Servers page to create Migration Server resources for your project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Migration Servers** tab.
- 3 Click **Create** to open the Create Migration Server dialog.
- 4 Specify the following information for the Migration Server resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
  - ♦ Migration Server Type (PlateSpin Migrate or Other)
  - ♦ Server URL

For a PlateSpin Migrate server: [https://Your\\_PlateSpin\\_Server/Migrate](https://Your_PlateSpin_Server/Migrate).

- ◆ Credential
- 5 Click **Save** to create the Migration Server resource.
  - 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 25.4 Associating Migration Servers and Target Workloads

After you create Migration Server resources for a project, you can associate them with workloads. You can specify the Migration Server resource for each workload, or select **Automated Migration** to allow the PlateSpin Migrate Connector to load-balance the migration jobs across all of the project's available Migration Server resources of type PlateSpin Migrate.

In Automated Mode, imported workloads are automatically set to Automated Migration. You can set individual workloads separately. Automated Migration is disabled for a workload if the transformation method is not supported by automated migration. See [Section 19.3, "Workload Transformation Methods," on page 136](#).

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 Select the workload, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the workload of interest.
- 4 On the Workload dialog in the **Transformation Plan** panel, click **Edit**.
- 5 Do one of the following:
  - ◆ **Migration Server:** From the **Migration Server** list, select the migration server resource that you want to assign to the target workload.
  - ◆ **Automated Migration:** Select the **Automated Migration** check box to enable automated assignment from among the available Migration Server resources that are of type PlateSpin Migrate.
- 6 (Optional) Modify other Transformation Plan information as appropriate.
- 7 Click **Save**, and then click **Close**.
- 8 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

## 25.5 Editing a Migration Server Resource

You can use the Migration Servers page to edit a Migration Server resource for the target transformation environment of a project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Migration Servers** tab.
- 3 In the **Migration Servers** list, select the migration server, then click **Edit** (or double-click the migration server) to open the Edit Migration Server dialog.
- 4 Modify any of the following information for the Migration Server resource:
  - ◆ Name
  - ◆ Organization
  - ◆ Project
  - ◆ Description

- ♦ Migration Server Type
  - ♦ Server URL
  - ♦ Credential
- 5 Click **Save** to update the Migration Server resource.
  - 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 25.6 Deleting a Migration Server

You can use the Migration Servers page to delete a Migration Server resource for the target transformation environment of a project. Transformation Manager checks for assigned workloads and warns if the resource is associated with any workloads.

---

**NOTE:** If you delete a resource, it automatically removes the associations for the resource, including those assigned to workloads that are in progress and completed. If workloads are associated with it, consider whether it is more appropriate to edit the resource name and settings.

---

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Migration Servers** tab.
- 3 View the list of migration server resources.
- 4 Select the appropriate migration server, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

# 26 Managing Network Resources

Network resources allow you to track information about the networks for the workloads. You can use the Networks page to create, manage, and delete networks for the target workloads in your transformation project. You can define network resources for the source workloads in the machine information for a bulk import. A network resource can apply to source workloads or to target workloads, but not to both.

- ♦ [Section 26.1, “About Network Resources,” on page 213](#)
- ♦ [Section 26.2, “Viewing Networks,” on page 213](#)
- ♦ [Section 26.3, “Creating a Source Network,” on page 214](#)
- ♦ [Section 26.4, “Creating a Target Network,” on page 214](#)
- ♦ [Section 26.5, “Associating Networks and Target Workloads,” on page 214](#)
- ♦ [Section 26.6, “Editing a Target Network,” on page 215](#)
- ♦ [Section 26.7, “Deleting a Network,” on page 215](#)

## 26.1 About Network Resources

The network resource allows you to track the following information for a network used by the one or more workloads in your transformation project:

**Name:** Specify a name for the network that is unique to your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** Select the parent organization for the project.

**Project:** Select the parent project for the network.

**Description:** (Optional) Specify a brief description of the network. This text appears by default in the Networks list.

## 26.2 Viewing Networks

All roles for a project can view the network information.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**, then select the **Networks** tab.

You can also view networks for a single project in the **Associations** area of the Edit Project dialog. Select **Planning > Projects**, double-click the project, then under **Associations**, select the **Networks** tab.

- 2 On the **Networks** tab, do either of the following to view a list of resources:
  - ♦ Click the **Source** link to view network information that you imported for original workloads using Spreadsheet Import.
  - ♦ Click the **Target** link to view network information for the target transformation environment.

- 3 Select a network resource, then click **View** (or double-click the resource) to view the following settings for the resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 4 (Optional) Filter entries in the Networks list using the **Search** field to show only the networks of interest. Type a sequence of characters in the **Search** area to initiate filtering. The filter applies as you type. You can filter on information in any one of the columns at a time.
- 5 (Optional) Sort entries by the values in a column. Mouse over the column to expose the menu option, click it, then select **Sort Ascending** or **Sort Descending**.

## 26.3 Creating a Source Network

You can create a network resource for a source workload by specifying the **NIC# Network Name** in the machine definition in the Bulk Import spreadsheet. The name is case sensitive. If no match is found, PTM creates a new source network resource for the project. On import, it automatically associates the network resource with the source workload.

## 26.4 Creating a Target Network

You can use the Networks page to create network resources for the target transformation environment of a project. Auto-discovery for target VMware Clusters hosts automatically creates new Network resources that it discovers for the target host.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Networks** tab, then click **Target**.
- 3 Click **Create** to open the Create Network dialog.
- 4 Specify the following information for the network resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 5 Click **Save** to create the network resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 26.5 Associating Networks and Target Workloads

After you create target Network resources for a project, you can associate them with workloads.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 Select the workload, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the workload of interest.
- 4 On the Workload dialog in the **Network Interfaces** panel, click **Edit**.

- 5 From the **Network** list, select the network resource that you want to assign to the target workload.
- 6 (Optional) Modify other network interface information as appropriate.
- 7 Click **Save**, and then click **Close**.
- 8 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

## 26.6 Editing a Target Network

You can use the Networks page to edit a network resource for the target transformation environment of a project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Networks** tab, then click **Target**.
- 3 In the **Networks** list, select the network, then click **Edit** (or double-click the network) to open the Edit Network dialog.
- 4 Modify any of the following information for the network resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 5 Click **Save** to update the network resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 26.7 Deleting a Network

You can use the Networks page to delete a network resource for the source or target transformation environment of a project.

---

**NOTE:** If you delete a resource, it automatically removes the associations for the resource, including those assigned to workloads that are in progress and completed. If the same associations apply, consider whether it is more appropriate to edit the resource name and settings.

---

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Networks** tab.
- 3 (Optional) Delete a source network resource:
  - 3a Click **Source** to view the list of source network resources.
  - 3b Select the appropriate network, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
- 4 (Optional) Delete a target network resource:
  - 4a Click **Target** to view the list of target network resources.
  - 4b Select the appropriate network, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.





# 27 Managing Datastore Resources

Datastore resources allow you to track information about the datastores for virtual workloads. In a virtualization environment, the datastore represents a storage location for virtual machine files and virtual disk files.

You can use the Datastores page to create, manage, and delete datastores for the target workloads in your transformation project. You can define datastore resources for the source workloads in the machine information for a bulk import. A datastore resource can apply to source workloads or to target workloads, but not to both.

- ♦ [Section 27.1, “About Datastore Resources,” on page 217](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.2, “Viewing Datastores,” on page 217](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.3, “Creating a Source Datastore,” on page 218](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.4, “Creating a Target Datastore,” on page 218](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.5, “Associating Datastores and Target Workloads,” on page 218](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.6, “Editing a Target Datastore,” on page 219](#)
- ♦ [Section 27.7, “Deleting a Target Datastore,” on page 219](#)

## 27.1 About Datastore Resources

The Datastore resource allows you to track the following information for a datastore used by the one or more workloads in your transformation project:

**Name:** Specify a name for the datastore that is unique to your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** Select the parent organization for the project.

**Project:** Select the parent project for the datastore.

**Description:** (Optional) Specify a brief description of the datastore. This text appears by default in the Datastores list.

## 27.2 Viewing Datastores

All roles for a project can view the datastore information.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**, then select the **Datastores** tab.

You can also view datastores for a single project in the **Associations** area of the Edit Project dialog. Select **Planning > Projects**, double-click the project, then under **Associations**, select the **Datastores** tab.

- 2 On the **Datastores** tab, do either of the following to view a list of resources:

- ♦ Click the **Source** link to view datastore information that you imported for original workloads using Spreadsheet Import.
- ♦ Click the **Target** link to view datastore information for the target transformation environment.

- 3 Select a datastore resource, then click **View** (or double-click the resource) to view the following settings for the resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 4 (Optional) Filter entries in the Datastores list using the **Search** field to show only the datastores of interest. Type a sequence of characters in the **Search** area to initiate filtering. The filter applies as you type. You can filter on information in any one of the columns at a time.
- 5 (Optional) Sort entries by the values in a column. Mouse over the column to expose the menu option, click it, then select **Sort Ascending** or **Sort Descending**.

## 27.3 Creating a Source Datastore

You can create a datastore resource for a source workload by specifying the **Diskx Datastore Name** in the machine definition in the Bulk Import spreadsheet. The name is case sensitive. If no match is found, PTM creates a new source datastore resource for the project. On import, it automatically associates the datastore resource with the source workload.

## 27.4 Creating a Target Datastore

You can use the Datastores page to create Datastore resources for the target transformation environment of a project. Auto-discovery for target VMware Clusters hosts automatically creates new Datastore resources that it discovers for the target host.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Datastores** tab, then click **Target**.
- 3 Click **Create** to open the Create Datastore dialog.
- 4 Specify the following information for the Datastore resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 5 Click **Save** to create the Datastore resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 27.5 Associating Datastores and Target Workloads

After you create target datastore resources for a project, you can associate them with virtual workloads. You can use the same datastore or different datastores for the system and data volumes and the VM Config Datastore.

**To set the target datastore resource for a storage volume:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Workloads** tab.

- 3 Select the workload, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the workload of interest.
- 4 On the Workload dialog in the **Storage** panel, click **Edit**.
- 5 On the Volumes tab, select the volume.
- 6 From the **Datastore** list, select the datastore resource that you want to assign to the target workload.
- 7 (Optional) Modify other disk and volume interface information as appropriate.
- 8 Click **Save**, and then click **Close**.
- 9 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

**To set the datastore resource for a virtual workload's VM Config Datastore:**

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 Select the workload, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the workload of interest.
- 4 On the Workload dialog in the **Location** panel, click **Edit**.
- 5 From the **VM Config Datastore** list, select the datastore resource that you want to assign to the target workload.
- 6 Click **Save**, and then click **Close**.
- 7 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

## 27.6 Editing a Target Datastore

You can use the Datastores page to edit a Datastore resource for the target transformation environment of a project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Datastores** tab, then click **Target**.
- 3 In the **Datastores** list, select the datastore, then click **Edit** to open the Edit Datastore dialog. You can alternatively double-click the datastore of interest.
- 4 Modify any of the following information for the Datastore resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 5 Click **Save** to update the Datastore resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 27.7 Deleting a Target Datastore

You can use the Datastores page to delete a Datastore resource for the source or target transformation environment of a project.

---

**NOTE:** If you delete a resource, it automatically removes the associations for the resource, including those assigned to workloads that are in progress and completed. If the same associations apply, consider whether it is more appropriate to edit the resource name and settings.

---

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Datastores** tab.
- 3 (Optional) Delete a source Datastore resource:
  - 3a Click **Source** to view the list of source datastore resources.
  - 3b Select the appropriate datastore, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.
- 4 (Optional) Delete a target Datastore resource:
  - 4a Click **Target** to view the list of target datastore resources.
  - 4b Select the appropriate datastore, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

# 28 Managing Resource Pool Resources

Resource Pool resources allow you to track the resource pools that are used by VMs on a host server running a VMware hypervisor. You can use the Resource Pool page to create, manage, view, and delete the resource pool resources for the target workloads in your transformation project. Resource Pools do not apply to source workloads.

- ♦ [Section 28.1, “About Resource Pool Resources,” on page 221](#)
- ♦ [Section 28.2, “Viewing Resource Pools,” on page 221](#)
- ♦ [Section 28.3, “Creating a Resource Pool,” on page 222](#)
- ♦ [Section 28.4, “Associating Resource Pools with Workloads,” on page 222](#)
- ♦ [Section 28.5, “Editing a Resource Pool,” on page 222](#)
- ♦ [Section 28.6, “Deleting a Resource Pool,” on page 223](#)

## 28.1 About Resource Pool Resources

The Resource Pool resource allows you to track the following information for a VMware resource pool where one or more virtual workloads reside in your transformation project:

**Name:** Specify a name for the resource pool that is unique to your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** Select the parent organization for the project.

**Project:** Select the parent project for the resource pool.

**Description:** (Optional) Specify a brief description of the resource pool. This text appears by default in the Resource Pools list.

## 28.2 Viewing Resource Pools

All roles for a project can view the resource pool information.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**, then select the **Resource Pools** tab.  
You can also view resource pools for a single project in the **Associations** area of the Edit Project dialog. Select **Planning > Projects**, double-click the project. In the Edit Project dialog under **Associations**, select the **Resources** tab, then select **Resource Pools**.
- 2 On the **Resource Pools** tab, view the list of resources.
- 3 Select a resource pool resource, then click **View** (or double-click the resource) to view the following settings for the resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description

- 4 (Optional) Filter entries in the Resource Pools list using the **Search** field to show only the resource pools of interest. Type a sequence of characters in the **Search** area to initiate filtering. The filter applies as you type. You can filter on information in any one of the columns at a time.
- 5 (Optional) Sort entries by the values in a column. Mouse over the column to expose the menu option, click it, then select **Sort Ascending** or **Sort Descending**.

## 28.3 Creating a Resource Pool

You can use the Resource Pools page to create Resource Pool resources for the target transformation environment of a project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Resource Pools** tab.
- 3 Click **Create** to open the Create Resource Pool dialog.
- 4 Specify the following information for the Resource Pool resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 5 Click **Save** to create the Resource Pool resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 28.4 Associating Resource Pools with Workloads

After you create Resource Pools resources for a project, you can associate them with virtual workloads on VMware virtualization host servers.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 Select the workload, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the workload of interest.
- 4 On the Workload dialog in the **Location** panel, click **Edit**.
- 5 From the **Resource Pool** list, select the resource pool resource that you want to assign to the target workload.
- 6 (Optional) Modify other Location information as appropriate.
- 7 Click **Save**, and then click **Close**.
- 8 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

## 28.5 Editing a Resource Pool

You can use the Resource Pools page to edit a Resource Pool resource for the target transformation environment of a project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Resource Pools** tab.

- 3 In the **Resource Pools** list, select the resource pool, then click **Edit** (or double-click the resource pool) to open the Edit Resource Pool dialog.
- 4 Modify any of the following information for the Resource Pool resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 5 Click **Save** to update the Resource Pool resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 28.6 Deleting a Resource Pool

You can use the Resource Pools page to delete a resource pool resource for the target transformation environment of a project.

---

**NOTE:** If you delete a resource, it automatically removes the associations for the resource, including those assigned to workloads that are in progress and completed. If the same associations apply, consider whether it is more appropriate to edit the resource name and settings.

---

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Resource Pools** tab.
- 3 View the list of resource pool resources.
- 4 Select the appropriate resource pool, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.





# 29 Managing Environment Resources

Environment resources allow you to track the logical environments for workloads in your network. Examples include staging, preproduction, and production. You can use the Environments page to create, manage, and delete environments for the target workloads in your transformation project. You can define environment resources for the source workloads in the machine information for a bulk import. Environment resources can apply to source and target workloads.

- ♦ [Section 29.1, “About Environment Resources,” on page 225](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.2, “Viewing Environments,” on page 225](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.3, “Creating a Source Environment,” on page 226](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.4, “Creating an Environment,” on page 226](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.5, “Associating Environments and Target Workloads,” on page 226](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.6, “Editing an Environment,” on page 227](#)
- ♦ [Section 29.7, “Deleting an Environment,” on page 227](#)

## 29.1 About Environment Resources

The Environment resource allows you to track the following information for a logical environment where one or more workloads reside in your transformation project:

**Name:** Specify a name for the environment that is unique to your transformation project. The name must begin with a letter or number. It can contain only letters, numbers, and the following special characters: space, hyphen, underscore, apostrophe, percent, ampersand, comma, and period.

**Organization:** Select the parent organization for the project.

**Project:** Select the parent project for the environment.

**Description:** (Optional) Specify a brief description of the environment. This text appears by default in the Environments list.

## 29.2 Viewing Environments

All roles for a project can view the environment information.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**, then select the **Environments** tab.  
You can also view environments for a single project in the **Associations** area of the Edit Project dialog. Select **Planning > Projects**, double-click the project, then under **Associations**, select the **Environments** tab.
- 2 On the **Environments** tab, view the list of resources.
- 3 Select an environment resource, then click **View** (or double-click the resource) to view the following settings for the resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization

- ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 4 (Optional) Filter entries in the Environments list using the **Search** field to show only the environments of interest. Type a sequence of characters in the **Search** area to initiate filtering. The filter applies as you type. You can filter on information in any one of the columns at a time.
  - 5 (Optional) Sort entries by the values in a column. Mouse over the column to expose the menu option, click it, then select **Sort Ascending** or **Sort Descending**.

## 29.3 Creating a Source Environment

You can create an environment resource during a Spreadsheet Import by specifying the **Environment** in the machine definition in the Bulk Import spreadsheet. The name is case sensitive. If no match is found, PTM creates a new environment resource for the project. On import, it automatically associates the environment resource with the source workload.

## 29.4 Creating an Environment

You can use the Environments page to create Environment resources for a project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Environments** tab.
- 3 Click **Create** to open the Create Environment dialog.
- 4 Specify the following information for the Environment resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 5 Click **Save** to create the Environment resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 29.5 Associating Environments and Target Workloads

After you create environment resources for a project, you can associate them with workloads.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Planning**.
- 2 Select the **Workloads** tab.
- 3 Select the workload, then click **Edit**. You can alternatively double-click the workload of interest.
- 4 On the Workload dialog in the **Location** panel, click **Edit**.
- 5 From the **Environment** list, select the environment resource that you want to assign to the target workload.
- 6 (Optional) Modify other Location information as appropriate.
- 7 Click **Save**, and then click **Close**.
- 8 Click **Close** to exit the Workload dialog.

## 29.6 Editing an Environment

You can use the Environments page to edit an Environment resource for a project.

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Environments** tab.
- 3 In the **Environments** list, select the environment, then click **Edit** (or double-click the environment) to open the Edit Environment dialog.
- 4 Modify any of the following information for the Environment resource:
  - ♦ Name
  - ♦ Organization
  - ♦ Project
  - ♦ Description
- 5 Click **Save** to update the Environment resource.
- 6 Click **Close** to exit the dialog.

## 29.7 Deleting an Environment

You can use the Environments page to delete an Environment resource for a project.

---

**NOTE:** If you delete a resource, it automatically removes the associations for the resource, including those assigned to workloads that are in progress and completed. If the same associations apply, consider whether it is more appropriate to edit the resource name and settings.

---

- 1 In the Web Interface toolbar, select **Resources**.
- 2 Select the **Environments** tab.
- 3 Click **Target** to view the list of environment resources.
- 4 Select the appropriate environment, click **Delete**, then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion.



# VII Appendixes

This section contains additional information about PlateSpin Transformation Manager.

- ♦ [Appendix C, “Global Planning Objects,” on page 231](#)
- ♦ [Appendix D, “Documentation Updates,” on page 241](#)



# C Global Planning Objects

In PlateSpin Transformation Manager, global planning objects are available to all projects.

- ♦ [Section C.1, “User Roles,” on page 231](#)
- ♦ [Section C.2, “Workload Types,” on page 231](#)
- ♦ [Section C.3, “Workload Transformation Methods,” on page 232](#)
- ♦ [Section C.4, “Operating System Families,” on page 232](#)
- ♦ [Section C.5, “Operating System Architectures,” on page 232](#)
- ♦ [Section C.6, “Cloud Providers,” on page 233](#)
- ♦ [Section C.7, “Virtualization Technologies \(Hypervisors\),” on page 233](#)
- ♦ [Section C.8, “Volume Types,” on page 233](#)
- ♦ [Section C.9, “Storage Mapping Strategies,” on page 233](#)
- ♦ [Section C.10, “Storage Objects,” on page 233](#)
- ♦ [Section C.11, “Disk Copy Methods,” on page 234](#)
- ♦ [Section C.12, “Compression Levels,” on page 234](#)
- ♦ [Section C.13, “Migration Server Types,” on page 234](#)
- ♦ [Section C.14, “Host Discovery States,” on page 234](#)
- ♦ [Section C.15, “Project Phases,” on page 235](#)
- ♦ [Section C.16, “Transformation Phases,” on page 235](#)
- ♦ [Section C.17, “Workload Health,” on page 235](#)
- ♦ [Section C.18, “Workflow Status,” on page 236](#)
- ♦ [Section C.19, “Migration Sub Status,” on page 237](#)

## C.1 User Roles

- ♦ System Administrator
- ♦ Project Manager
- ♦ Project Architect
- ♦ Migration Specialist
- ♦ Dashboard Viewer

See [Section 9.2, “Roles,” on page 85](#).

## C.2 Workload Types

- ♦ Cloud
- ♦ Physical
- ♦ Virtual

## C.3 Workload Transformation Methods

- ♦ Cloud to cloud (C to C)
- ♦ Cloud to physical (C to P)
- ♦ Cloud to virtual (C to V)
- ♦ Decommission (Decom)
- ♦ Lift and shift (LnS)
- ♦ Physical to cloud (P to C)
- ♦ Physical to physical (P to P)
- ♦ Physical to virtual (P to V)
- ♦ Virtual to cloud (V to C)
- ♦ Virtual file move (VFM)
- ♦ Virtual to physical (V to P)
- ♦ Virtual to virtual (V to V)

See [Section 21.7, “Editing the Workload Transformation,”](#) on page 164.

## C.4 Operating System Families

- ♦ CentOS
- ♦ Citrix
- ♦ Linux
- ♦ NetWare/OES
- ♦ Other
- ♦ Red Hat Linux
- ♦ Solaris
- ♦ SUSE Linux
- ♦ Ubuntu
- ♦ Unknown
- ♦ VMware ESX
- ♦ Windows

See [Section 8, “Configuring Operating Systems,”](#) on page 77.

## C.5 Operating System Architectures

- ♦ x32 (32 bit)
- ♦ x64 (64 bit)

See [Section 8, “Configuring Operating Systems,”](#) on page 77.



## C.6 Cloud Providers

The Cloud Provider options represent the top providers by market share in the industry.

- ♦ Amazon Web Services
- ♦ Google
- ♦ Microsoft Azure
- ♦ None
- ♦ Rackspace
- ♦ vCloud

See [Section 24.2, “About Host Resources,” on page 203.](#)

## C.7 Virtualization Technologies (Hypervisors)

The hypervisor options represent the top virtualization technologies by market share in the industry.

- ♦ Citrix XenServer
- ♦ Linux KVM
- ♦ Microsoft Hyper-V
- ♦ None
- ♦ SUSE Xen
- ♦ VMware

See [Section 24.2, “About Host Resources,” on page 203.](#)

## C.8 Volume Types

- ♦ Local
- ♦ NAS (network attached storage)
- ♦ SAN (storage area network)
- ♦ System

## C.9 Storage Mapping Strategies

- ♦ Same as Source
- ♦ Custom
- ♦ All Volumes on a Single Disk
- ♦ One Volume per Disk

## C.10 Storage Objects

- ♦ Disk
- ♦ Dynamic Mirrored

- ♦ Dynamic RAID 5
- ♦ Dynamic Simple
- ♦ Dynamic Spanned
- ♦ Dynamic Striped
- ♦ Partition
- ♦ Swap
- ♦ Volume
- ♦ Volume Group

## C.11 Disk Copy Methods

Disk copy methods are used for data transfer between the source workload and target workload.

- ♦ Block with Driver
- ♦ Block without Driver
- ♦ File

## C.12 Compression Levels

Compression levels represent the available compression methods for data transfer during replication.

- ♦ Fast
- ♦ Maximum
- ♦ None
- ♦ Optimal

## C.13 Migration Server Types

- ♦ PlateSpin Migrate
- ♦ Other (any migration tool can be defined using this category)

## C.14 Host Discovery States

The Hosts list displays the Host discovery state in the Status column.

- ♦ Discovering
- ♦ Discovery Failed
- ♦ Discovery Succeeded
- ♦ Discovered

## C.15 Project Phases

The Projects list displays the Project Phase in the Status column.

- ♦ Planning
- ♦ Ready to Transform
- ♦ In Progress
- ♦ Completed

## C.16 Transformation Phases

The Transformation Phases are options in the Transformation Plan workflow. The Workloads list displays the Transformation Phase in the Status column. You can set the transformation phase manually by using the Workload dialog for a single workload or the Bulk Status Change dialog for one or more selected workloads.

- ♦ Ready to be Imported
- ♦ Imported
- ♦ Needs Additional Info
- ♦ Ready to Submit
- ♦ Submitted, Waiting for Start Date
- ♦ Ready to Transform
- ♦ Transforming
- ♦ Transformation Failed
- ♦ Pre-Cutover Testing
- ♦ Pre-Cutover Testing Failed
- ♦ Pre-Cutover Testing Succeeded
- ♦ Ready to Cut Over, Waiting for Cutover Date
- ♦ Ready to Cut Over
- ♦ Cut Over
- ♦ Post-Cutover Testing
- ♦ Post-Cutover Testing Failed
- ♦ Post-Cutover Testing Succeeded
- ♦ Completed
- ♦ Reopened
- ♦ Withdrawn
- ♦ Error

## C.17 Workload Health

Workload health reports error conditions for workload transformation. You can search on Health objects in the Advanced Search for workloads.

- ♦ All

- ♦ OK
- ♦ Warning
- ♦ Error
- ♦ All Warning states
- ♦ Other warnings
- ♦ State warnings
- ♦ Sub State warnings
- ♦ All Planning warnings
- ♦ Start date is before batch start date
- ♦ Cutover date is after batch end date
- ♦ Invalid date range
- ♦ Not started, but start date has passed
- ♦ Not cut over, but cutover date has passed

## C.18 Workflow Status

Status reflects the transformation workflow for the workload. You can search on Status objects in the Advanced Search for workloads.

- ♦ All
- ♦ All Defining states
- ♦ All Failed states
- ♦ All In-progress states
- ♦ All Submitted states
- ♦ Completed
- ♦ Cut Over
- ♦ Error
- ♦ Imported
- ♦ Importing
- ♦ Needs Additional Info
- ♦ Post-cutover Testing
- ♦ Post-cutover Testing Failed
- ♦ Post-cutover Testing Succeeded
- ♦ Pre-cutover Testing
- ♦ Pre-cutover Testing Failed
- ♦ Pre-cutover Testing Succeeded
- ♦ Ready to Cut Over
- ♦ Ready to Cut Over, waiting for Cutover Date
- ♦ Ready to Import
- ♦ Ready to Submit
- ♦ Ready to Transform

- ♦ Reopened
- ♦ Submitted, waiting for Start Date
- ♦ Transformation Failed
- ♦ Transforming
- ♦ Withdrawn

## C.19 Migration Sub Status

In a PlateSpin Migration Factory environment, the PlateSpin Migrate Server reports events in the migration process. You can search on Sub Status objects in the Advanced Search for workloads.

- ♦ All
- ♦ Adding workload failed
- ♦ Adding workload to migration server
- ♦ Automated migrations not supported for this workload
- ♦ Cancel pre-cutover testing
- ♦ Canceling create test cutover environment
- ♦ Canceling cutover
- ♦ Canceling incremental replication
- ♦ Canceling initial replication
- ♦ Canceling reverting test cutover
- ♦ Canceling target VM prepare
- ♦ Canceling target host discovery
- ♦ Create test cutover environment failed
- ♦ Create test cutover environment stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Create test cutover environment succeeded
- ♦ Creating test cutover environment. Please wait.
- ♦ Custom import scripts failed
- ♦ Custom import scripts succeeded
- ♦ Cutover canceled
- ♦ Cutover completed
- ♦ Cutover in progress
- ♦ Discovering target host
- ♦ Discovery not attempted
- ♦ Incremental replication
- ♦ Incremental replication canceled
- ♦ Incremental replication failed
- ♦ Incremental replication paused while testing
- ♦ Incremental replication stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Incremental replication succeeded
- ♦ Initial replication

- ♦ Initial replication canceled
- ♦ Initial replication failed
- ♦ Initial replication stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Initial replication succeeded
- ♦ Invalid custom import script
- ♦ Invalid post-cutover testing script
- ♦ Invalid pre-migration validation script
- ♦ Migrate Server insufficient licenses
- ♦ Migrate Server not configured
- ♦ Migration cutover process failed
- ♦ Migration cutover progress stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Migration environment prepare failed
- ♦ Migration environment prepare stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Post-cutover automated testing
- ♦ Post-cutover automated testing failed
- ♦ Post-cutover automated testing succeeded
- ♦ Post-cutover testing failed
- ♦ Post-cutover testing in progress
- ♦ Post-cutover testing stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Post-cutover testing succeeded
- ♦ Pre-cutover automated testing
- ♦ Pre-cutover automated testing failed
- ♦ Pre-cutover automated testing stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Pre-cutover automated testing succeeded.
- ♦ Pre-cutover invalid automated testing scripts
- ♦ Pre-cutover manual tests failed
- ♦ Pre-cutover manual tests in progress
- ♦ Pre-cutover manual tests succeeded
- ♦ Pre-cutover waiting for user to complete manual tests
- ♦ Pre-migration validation
- ♦ Pre-migration validation failed
- ♦ Pre-migration validation stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Pre-migration validation succeeded
- ♦ Preparing target VM
- ♦ Ready to replicate
- ♦ Removing the completed workload details failed
- ♦ Removing the completed workload details succeeded
- ♦ Removing the completed workload from the migration server
- ♦ Replicating
- ♦ Replication succeeded

- ♦ Replication failed
- ♦ Replication stalled
- ♦ Revert test cutover succeeded
- ♦ Reverting test cutover
- ♦ Reverting test cutover failed
- ♦ Reverting test cutover stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Running custom import scripts
- ♦ Target VM prepare canceled
- ♦ Target host discovered
- ♦ Target host discovery canceled
- ♦ Target host discovery failed
- ♦ Target host discovery stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Unhandled error
- ♦ User-provided note
- ♦ Waiting for manual post-cutover testing
- ♦ Waiting for migration server to initiate prepare
- ♦ Waiting for physical host to register
- ♦ Waiting for user to initiate cutover
- ♦ Withdrawing workload
- ♦ Workload add stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Workload added to migration server
- ♦ Workload being removed from migration server
- ♦ Workload configure failed
- ♦ Workload configure stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Workload discovery
- ♦ Workload discovery failed
- ♦ Workload discovery stalled. Attempting auto-recovery.
- ♦ Workload discovery succeeded
- ♦ Workload not configured
- ♦ Workload removed from migration server
- ♦ Workload target removed from migration server and host





# D Documentation Updates

This section contains information on documentation content changes that were made in the English translation of this *User Guide* after the initial release of PlateSpin Transformation Manager 1.1 SP1 (1.1.1).

## D.1 June 2018

Location	Update
<a href="#">Figure 2-1, “Ports Map for PlateSpin Migration Factory,” on page 35</a>	This figure is new.

